
Broker-Dealer Regulation

Second Edition

Volume 1



PLI'S COMPLETE LIBRARY OF TREATISE TITLES

ART LAW

Art Law: The Guide for Collectors, Investors, Dealers & Artists

BANKING & COMMERCIAL LAW

Asset-Based Lending: A Practical Guide to Secured Financing
Documenting Secured Transactions: Effective Drafting and Litigation
Equipment Leasing–Leveraged Leasing
Hillman on Commercial Loan Documentation
Maritime Law Answer Book

BANKRUPTCY LAW

Bankruptcy Deskbook
Personal Bankruptcy Answer Book

BUSINESS, CORPORATE & SECURITIES LAW

Accountants' Liability
Anti-Money Laundering: A Practical Guide to Law and Compliance
Antitrust Law Answer Book
Broker-Dealer Regulation
Conducting Due Diligence in a Securities Offering
Consumer Financial Services Answer Book
Corporate Compliance Answer Book
Corporate Legal Departments: Practicing Law in a Corporation
Corporate Political Activities Deskbook
Corporate Whistleblowing in the Sarbanes-Oxley/Dodd-Frank Era
Covered Bonds Handbook
Cybersecurity: A Practical Guide to the Law of Cyber Risk
Derivatives Deskbook: Close-Out Netting, Risk Mitigation, Litigation
Deskbook on Internal Investigations, Corporate Compliance, and White Collar Issues
Directors' and Officers' Liability: Current Law, Recent Developments, Emerging Issues
Doing Business Under the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act
EPA Compliance and Enforcement Answer Book
Exempt and Hybrid Securities Offerings
Fashion Law and Business: Brands & Retailers
Financial Institutions Answer Book: Law, Governance, Compliance
Financial Product Fundamentals: Law, Business, Compliance
Financial Services Regulation Deskbook
Financially Distressed Companies Answer Book
Global Business Fraud and the Law: Preventing and Remediating Fraud and Corruption
Hedge Fund Regulation
Initial Public Offerings: A Practical Guide to Going Public
Insider Trading Law and Compliance Answer Book
Insurance and Investment Management M&A Deskbook
International Corporate Practice: A Practitioner's Guide to Global Success
Investment Adviser Regulation: A Step-by-Step Guide to Compliance and the Law
Life at the Center: Reflections on Fifty Years of Securities Regulation
Mergers, Acquisitions and Tender Offers: Law and Strategies
Mutual Funds and Exchange Traded Funds Regulation
Outsourcing: A Practical Guide to Law and Business
Privacy Law Answer Book
Private Equity Funds: Formation and Operation
Proskauer on Privacy: A Guide to Privacy and Data Security Law in the Information Age
Public Company Deskbook: Complying with Federal Governance & Disclosure Requirements
SEC Compliance and Enforcement Answer Book
Securities Investigations: Internal, Civil and Criminal
Securities Law and Practice Handbook

The Securities Law of Public Finance
Securities Litigation: A Practitioner's Guide
Social Media and the Law
Soderquist on Corporate Law and Practice
Sovereign Wealth Funds: A Legal, Tax and Economic Perspective
A Starter Guide to Doing Business in the United States
Technology Transactions: A Practical Guide to Drafting and Negotiating Commercial Agreements
Variable Annuities and Variable Life Insurance Regulation

COMMUNICATIONS LAW

Advertising and Commercial Speech: A First Amendment Guide
Sack on Defamation: Libel, Slander, and Related Problems
Telecommunications Law Answer Book

EMPLOYMENT LAW

Employment Law Yearbook
ERISA Benefits Litigation Answer Book
Labor Management Law Answer Book

ESTATE PLANNING AND ELDER LAW

Blattmachr on Income Taxation of Estates and Trusts
Estate Planning & Chapter 14: Understanding the Special Valuation Rules
International Tax & Estate Planning: A Practical Guide for Multinational Investors
Manning on Estate Planning
New York Elder Law
Stocker on Drawing Wills and Trusts

HEALTH LAW

FDA Deskbook: A Compliance and Enforcement Guide
Health Care Litigation and Risk Management Answer Book
Health Care Mergers and Acquisitions Answer Book
Medical Devices Law and Regulation Answer Book
Pharmaceutical Compliance and Enforcement Answer Book

IMMIGRATION LAW

Fragomen on Immigration Fundamentals: A Guide to Law and Practice

INSURANCE LAW

Business Liability Insurance Answer Book
Insurance Regulation Answer Book
Reinsurance Law

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY LAW

Copyright Law: A Practitioner's Guide
Faber on Mechanics of Patent Claim Drafting
Federal Circuit Yearbook: Patent Law Developments in the Federal Circuit
How to Write a Patent Application
Intellectual Property Law Answer Book
Kane on Trademark Law: A Practitioner's Guide
Likelihood of Confusion in Trademark Law
Patent Claim Construction and *Markman* Hearings
Patent Law: A Practitioner's Guide
Patent Licensing and Selling: Strategy, Negotiation, Forms
Patent Litigation
Pharmaceutical and Biotech Patent Law
Post-Grant Proceedings Before the Patent Trial and Appeal Board
Substantial Similarity in Copyright Law
Trade Secrets: A Practitioner's Guide

LITIGATION

American Arbitration: Principles and Practice
Class Actions and Mass Torts Answer Book
Electronic Discovery Deskbook
Essential Trial Evidence: Brought to Life by Famous Trials, Films, and Fiction
Expert Witness Answer Book
Evidence in Negligence Cases
Federal Bail and Detention Handbook
How to Handle an Appeal
Medical Malpractice: Discovery and Trial
Product Liability Litigation: Current Law, Strategies and Best Practices
Sinclair on Federal Civil Practice
Trial Handbook

REAL ESTATE LAW

Commercial Ground Leases
Friedman on Contracts and Conveyances of Real Property
Friedman on Leases
Holtzschue on Real Estate Contracts and Closings: A Step-by-Step Guide to Buying and Selling Real Estate
Net Leases and Sale-Leasebacks

TAX LAW

The Circular 230 Deskbook: Related Penalties, Reportable Transactions, Working Forms
The Corporate Tax Practice Series: Strategies for Acquisitions, Dispositions, Spin-Offs, Joint Ventures, Financings, Reorganizations & Restructurings
Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act Answer Book
Internal Revenue Service Practice and Procedure Deskbook
International Tax & Estate Planning: A Practical Guide for Multinational Investors
International Tax Controversies: A Practical Guide
International Trade Law Answer Book: U.S. Customs Laws and Regulations
Langer on Practical International Tax Planning
The Partnership Tax Practice Series: Planning for Domestic and Foreign Partnerships, LLCs, Joint Ventures & Other Strategic Alliances
Private Clients Legal & Tax Planning Answer Book
Transfer Pricing Answer Book

GENERAL PRACTICE PAPERBACKS

Anatomy of a Mediation: A Dealmaker's Distinctive Approach to Resolving Dollar Disputes and Other Commercial Conflicts
Attorney-Client Privilege Answer Book
Drafting for Corporate Finance: Concepts, Deals, and Documents
Pro Bono Service by In-House Counsel: Strategies and Perspectives
Smart Negotiating: How to Make Good Deals in the Real World
Thinking Like a Writer: A Lawyer's Guide to Effective Writing & Editing
Working with Contracts: What Law School Doesn't Teach You

**Order now at www.pli.edu
Or call (800) 260-4754 Mon.–Fri., 9 a.m.–6 p.m.**

**Practising Law Institute
1177 Avenue of the Americas
New York, NY 10036**

When ordering, please use Priority Code NWS9-X.

Broker-Dealer Regulation

Second Edition

Volume 1

**Edited by
Clifford E. Kirsch**

Incorporating Release #11
May 2017
#205847

**Practising Law Institute
New York City
#32789**

This work is designed to provide practical and useful information on the subject matter covered. However, it is sold with the understanding that neither the publisher nor the author is engaged in rendering legal, accounting, or other professional services. If legal advice or other expert assistance is required, the services of a competent professional should be sought.

QUESTIONS ABOUT THIS BOOK?

If you have questions about replacement pages, billing, or shipments, or would like information on our other products, please contact our **customer service department** at info@pli.edu or at (800) 260-4PLI.

For any other questions or suggestions about this book, contact PLI's **editorial department** at: plipress@pli.edu.

For general information about Practising Law Institute, please visit **www.pli.edu**.

Legal Editor: Carol Benedicto

Copyright © 2004, 2005, 2006, 2007, 2008, 2009, 2010, 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014, 2015, 2016, 2017 by Practising Law Institute.

All rights reserved. First edition 2004.
Second edition 2011.

Printed in the United States of America. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written consent of Practising Law Institute.

LCCN: 2011941369

ISBN: 978-1-4024-1689-7

To Abby,

You came from our dreams right into our hearts.

We are so lucky.

Love,

Daddy, Mommy, and Julia

About the Editor

Clifford E. Kirsch is a partner at Eversheds Sutherland in New York City. Previously, he was Vice President and Senior Corporate Counsel at the Prudential Insurance Company of America and prior to that, first vice president and associate general counsel at Paine Webber's asset management subsidiary. From 1985 to 1994, he was on the Staff of the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission, Division of Investment Management, in Washington, D.C. At the SEC, he held several positions, including Assistant Director in the Office of Insurance Products, and was a recipient of the Manuel F. Cohen Younger Lawyer Award.

Mr. Kirsch serves as chair for two annual American Law Institute/American Bar Association Course Offerings—"Investment Management Regulation" and "Investment Adviser Regulation." His other publications include *The Financial Services Revolution: Understanding the Changing Roles of Banks, Mutual Funds and Insurance Companies* (Irwin 1996), *Regulation and Distribution of Variable Insurance Products* (Aspen 1999), *Financial Product Fundamentals* (PLI 1999), *Investment Adviser Regulation* (PLI 1998), *Mutual Funds and Exchange Traded Funds Regulation* (PLI 2002), and *Variable Annuities and Variable Life Insurance Regulation* (PLI 2005). He is also co-author of *Investment Management Regulation* (Carolina Academic Press), a law school casebook published in 1998. He appears regularly on industry and legal panels that discuss broker-dealer and adviser matters, and serves as chair of ALI-ABA's course on Investment Adviser Regulation and PLI's courses on Broker-Dealer and Investment Adviser Regulation.

Mr. Kirsch authored chapters 1, 30, and 42G, and co-authored chapters 7, 10, 32, and 34.

About the Contributors

Matthew J. Alexander (Chapter 31B) is a senior associate in Mayer Brown LLP's Washington, D.C. office. He focuses his practice on the counseling and defense of corporations and individuals in a variety of enforcement matters, including the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act, federal securities and anti-money laundering laws and regulations, the False Claims Act, insider trading laws, as well as advising clients with respect to embargoes administered by the U.S. Department of Treasury, Office of Foreign Assets Control. Matt has extensive experience in designing, managing, executing, and presenting global investigations before numerous enforcement authorities, including the DOJ, SEC, and the World Bank's Integrity Vice Presidency. He received his J.D. in 2009 from the Georgetown University Law Center.

Richard B. Alsop (Chapter 49) has been a member of Shearman & Sterling's Capital Markets Group since March 2010. Mr. Alsop has extensive experience in capital markets transactions, corporate governance, corporate finance transactions, financial institutions, and underwriting practices. He advises corporations and investment banks on a broad variety of capital markets work, including IPOs, convertible bonds and investment grade and high-yield bond transactions and is part of our corporate governance advisory team. From 2003 through 2008, Mr. Alsop was Senior Vice President and General Counsel, Corporate Law at Merrill Lynch & Co., Inc., where he advised executive management and the board of directors on major corporate transactions, corporate finance, corporate governance, executive compensation and other matters. From 1994 through 2003, Mr. Alsop held other senior roles in the legal department of Merrill Lynch, including Equity Capital Markets Counsel, Investment Banking General Counsel and Debt Markets General Counsel. Mr. Alsop received his A.B., *cum laude*, from Columbia College, and his J.D. from Columbia University School of Law, where he was a Harlan Fiske Stone Scholar.

Peter J. Anderson (Chapter 36) is a partner with Eversheds Sutherland. He has practiced in the securities regulatory and enforcement

arena for approximately thirty years. His practice involves representing public companies, their officers and directors, along with financial services, accounting and law firms and their principals in U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) enforcement actions, Department of Justice investigations and criminal prosecutions, and complex civil litigation. Mr. Anderson also represents brokerage firms, broker-dealers and individual brokers before the SEC, all self-regulatory organizations, and state securities regulators and attorneys general in investigations relating to supervision, suitability, sales practices, and insider trading. Mr. Anderson served as a Deputy District Attorney in Harrisburg, Pennsylvania, and he has used that experience in representing white collar criminal defendants in both state and federal court. His securities litigation experience includes the defense of multi-district class actions, as well as the defense of securities clients in over forty federal and state jury trials and in numerous complex securities arbitrations. Mr. Anderson is a graduate of Dickinson College and Dickinson School of Law.

Andrew L. Bab (Chapter 20) is a partner with Debevoise & Plimpton LLP and a member of the firm's Healthcare and Life Sciences, Mergers & Acquisitions, Private Equity and Securities Groups. His practice focuses on mergers and acquisitions involving both public and private companies, including financial services companies, and on corporate and securities law matters. From 1992 to 1993, Mr. Bab served as a law clerk to the Hon. Thomas J. Meskill, Second Circuit. He received his J.D. in 1992 from Columbia Law School, where he was a Stone Scholar and Book Review Editor of the *Law Review*. From 1986 to 1989, Mr. Bab was an investment banker at Lazard Frères & Co. in New York. Mr. Bab received his B.A., *magna cum laude*, from Yale University in 1986.

Ernest Edward Badway (Chapter 42H) is a partner and co-chair of the Securities Industry Practice at the national law firm of Fox Rothschild LLP. He represents corporations, limited liability companies, partnerships, and financial institutions, such as broker-dealers, investment advisers, private equity and hedge funds, banks, and insurance companies, among others. He also counsels and advises officers, directors, executives, registered persons, and employees on a wide range of commercial, business, securities, intellectual property, employment, real estate, corporate, pharmaceuticals, partnership disputes, contracts, and other business issues and litigation. Additionally, Mr. Badway counsels and advises clients on the creation of broker-dealers,

About the Contributors

hedge funds, and investment advisers, as well as compliance and regulatory matters relating to their operations. Mr. Badway also serves as co-chair of the firm's White Collar Compliance & Defense Practice and has extensive experience in officer/director regulation and compliance, corporate governance, and white-collar criminal law issues. He represents these entities and individuals in internal investigations and commercial disputes involving litigation and alternative dispute forums, as well as corporate law matters concentrating in private placements and initial public offerings. A former SEC enforcement attorney, Mr. Badway is an adjunct Assistant Professor of Law at Brooklyn Law School, where he teaches a course in securities fraud enforcement. He has been appointed an arbitrator and mediator for FINRA, an arbitrator for the NFA, and an arbitrator and mediator for the New Jersey State Courts. Mr. Badway is the author of the *Encyclopedia of New York Causes of Action, Elements and Defenses* (N.J.L.J. Book July 2014); "Chapter 109: The Attorney-Client Privilege and the Work Product Doctrine," *Securities Law Techniques* (September 2009); and contributing author for Chapters 1 and 2 of *Securities Law Series: Securities Crimes*, Vol. 21 (Thomson Reuters/West November 2009). He has also published articles in the *New York Law Journal* and *New Jersey Law Journal*, and in industry publications such as *The Registered Rep. Magazine* and *The Hedge Fund Law Report*. Additionally, he is a regular contributor to the firm's Securities Compliance Sentinel Blog (<http://securitiescompliancesentinel.foxrothschild.com>). Mr. Badway received his J.D. from Duke University School of Law, and his M.A. and B.A. from Boston University.

Shanna B. Bayer (Chapter 48) is an associate in the Washington, D.C. office of Stradley Ronon Stevens & Young, LLP. Ms. Bayer counsels registered investment companies, private funds, investment advisers, commodity pool operators, and commodity trading advisers in connection with various regulatory, compliance, and transactional matters. Ms. Bayer advises investment management clients in all aspects of legal representation including: preparing regulatory filings; drafting and reviewing registration statements and proxy solicitation materials; researching securities, commodities and corporate law issues; drafting corporate policies and compliance procedures; reviewing SEC exemptive applications; and advising on CFTC compliance and registration issues.

Ms. Bayer received her J.D. from Georgetown University Law Center, where she was a member of the *Georgetown Journal of Law*

e) *Public Policy*. She was an extern at the Securities and Exchange Commission, and worked in both the Division of Enforcement's Structured and New Products Group and the Office of Compliance Inspections and Examinations. Ms. Bayer also served as a student attorney for the Georgetown Juvenile Justice Clinic and remains active in the clinic, providing assistance in legal research and the preparation of legal filings. Prior to law school, Ms. Bayer was a financial analyst and assistant portfolio manager at ALM Financial Services in Austin, Texas.

Andrew D. Beresin (Chapter 37D) is a partner at Murphy & McGonigle PC. Mr. Beresin's practice focuses on client counseling with respect to trading practices and fund management. In addition, Mr. Beresin focuses on providing legal representation to broker-dealers, investment advisers and security industry professionals in regulatory inquiries. His extensive trading and legal experience includes twelve years as an equity trader and trading desk analyst as well as nearly a decade as a litigator representing prominent Wall Street entities and their senior executives in high-stakes enforcement matters. Mr. Beresin's unique perspective as a former buy-side market professional provides him with an enhanced understanding of client needs and priorities regarding complex, often time-sensitive trading and investment-related issues. Mr. Beresin earned his B.S., *summa cum laude*, from the Wharton School of the University of Pennsylvania and his J.D., *cum laude*, from Harvard Law School.

Kenneth J. Berman (Chapter 20) is a partner with Debevoise & Plimpton LLP, resident in the firm's Washington, D.C. office. He is a member of the firm's Investment Management and Financial Institutions Groups. His practice focuses on investment management regulatory issues and related corporate and securities law matters. Prior to joining Debevoise in 2000, Mr. Berman was Associate Director of the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission's Division of Investment Management. Mr. Berman is a member of the Association of the Bar of the City of New York (Chair of the Committee on Investment Management Regulation), the American Bar Association (Subcommittee on Investment Companies and Investment Advisers, Subcommittee on Private Investment Entities), and the District of Columbia Bar. Mr. Berman is an adjunct professor of law in Georgetown University's LLM program, teaching a survey course on investment management regulation. Mr. Berman received his J.D. from the University of

About the Contributors

Chicago Law School in 1979, where he was a member of the *Law Review*; he received his B.A. from Dickinson College, where he was elected to Phi Beta Kappa.

Matthew G. Bisanz (Chapter 47) is a Financial Services Regulatory and Enforcement associate in Mayer Brown's Washington, D.C. office. He counsels U.S. and non-U.S. financial services firms on a variety of regulatory, compliance, enforcement, and transactional matters. Prior to joining the Washington, D.C. office of Mayer Brown in 2013, Mr. Bisanz worked at the SEC, CFTC, DOJ, and FDIC in various regulatory and investigative roles and at a Big Four accounting firm in New York.

Mr. Bisanz received his B.A., *magna cum laude*, from Hofstra University, where he was elected to Phi Beta Kappa; his B.B.A., *magna cum laude*, from Hofstra University, where he was elected to Beta Gamma Sigma; his MBA, *with distinction*, from Hofstra University, where he was elected to Beta Alpha Psi and served as the Alumni Submission Editor of the *Hofstra Journal of International Business & Law*; an Advanced Graduate Certificate from New York University; his J.D., from Georgetown University, where he served as the Operations Projects Editor of the *Georgetown Journal of Legal Ethics*; and his LL.M., *with distinction*, from Georgetown University. Mr. Bisanz is admitted to practice in the District of Columbia, New Jersey, and New York.

John T. Bostelman (Chapter 17) is a retired partner of Sullivan & Cromwell LLP, New York, where he coordinated the firm's securities law practice. He had a broad financial and corporate practice, including the areas of public and private securities offerings, corporate governance, investment management and broker-dealer regulation. Mr. Bostelman has been a speaker for numerous organizations, including the Practising Law Institute and committees of the American Bar Association. He is past Chair of the Securities Registration Subcommittee of the ABA Committee on Federal Regulation of Securities. Mr. Bostelman graduated from Yale University (B.A., 1975) and Columbia University Law School (J.D., 1979). He joined Sullivan & Cromwell LLP in 1979 and has been a partner since 1986.

James R. Burns (Chapters 21 and 21A) is a partner in the Asset Management Group of Willkie Farr & Gallagher, LLP, where he counsels investment managers, broker-dealers, self-regulatory organizations, and other registered entities on regulatory, compliance, and enforcement

matters. Having served at the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) as well as in private practice, Mr. Burns has significant experience in both the trading and markets and investment management areas. Before joining Willkie in 2014, Mr. Burns served as Deputy Director of the SEC's Division of Trading and Markets, where he oversaw core regulatory functions, including market supervision and operations, analytics and research, derivatives policy and trading practices, and the chief counsel and enforcement liaison offices. In addition to focusing on market supervisory issues, he participated in the Division's implementation of key provisions of the Dodd-Frank and JOBS Acts, coordinated international regulatory efforts for the Division, and liaised closely with other operating divisions of the agency. He led teams that won the Chairman's Award for Excellence for drafting the Consolidated Audit Trail release, and the Law and Policy Award for implementing the Volcker Rule. Prior to joining the Division of Trading and Markets, Mr. Burns was a member of Chairman Mary Schapiro's staff, including serving as the agency's Deputy Chief of Staff, in which capacity he advised Chairman Schapiro on the development and execution of the agency's broader rulemaking and policy agenda as well as other key agency initiatives. He also served as counsel to Chairman Schapiro on issues involving the Division of Trading and Markets and Investment Management, including the agency's analysis and response to the Flash Crash on May 6, 2010, and numerous other market structure and Dodd-Frank-related rulemakings, studies, and programs. Mr. Burns served as counsel to SEC Commissioner Kathleen Casey before joining Chairman Schapiro's staff, and previously worked for five years in private practice on investment management and broker-dealer regulatory, compliance, and enforcement matters. Mr. Burns earned his J.D., *cum laude*, from the Georgetown University Law Center, a doctoral degree in 1997 and a master's degree in 1994 from the University of Oxford, and AB, *magna cum laude*, from Harvard College in 1991.

David J. Butler (Chapter 43) is counsel with Bressler, Amery & Ross. Mr. Butler's practice is primarily devoted to securities litigation, securities arbitration, securities enforcement proceedings, as well as commercial litigation and business disputes. Mr. Butler's securities litigation experience includes representing securities broker-dealers and affiliated individuals in a variety of matters in state and federal courts, and before industry self-regulatory organizations. He also defends and prosecutes employment-related claims for securities

firms, including matters involving restrictive covenants and promissory notes. Mr. Butler holds his B.A. from Seton Hall University and his J.D. from Brooklyn Law School.

Kevin J. Campion (Chapter 37C) is a partner in the Washington, D.C. office of Sidley Austin LLP and Co-Head of the Firm's Broker-Dealer Securities Regulatory Practice Group. He advises a wide array of financial services firms including investment and commercial banks, broker-dealers and hedge funds—on a broad variety of regulatory, enforcement, compliance, and transaction matters. Mr. Campion focuses his practice in particular on broker-dealer and market regulation matters, with particular emphasis upon regulations governing short sales (Regulation SHO), short interest reporting, Regulation M, research analyst conflicts, FINRA advertising rules, clearance and settlement, and broker-dealer registration and compliance issues. Mr. Campion also regularly assists advisers and hedge funds with trading questions and long and short position disclosure requirements, including the requirements of sections 13(d), 13(f) and 16. He also assists clients, mostly clearing firms and prime brokers, in the defense of SEC, FINRA, NYSE and state enforcement actions and investigations, as well as securities law class actions. Mr. Campion has represented the Securities Industry Financial Markets Association with respect to comment letters submitted to the SEC, and in obtaining a variety of no-action letters from the SEC Staff relating to Regulation SHO and Rule 10a-1, including working with the SIFMA Prime Brokerage Committee on the new Prime Broker Letter.

Prior to joining the firm, Mr. Campion worked for over four years with the Securities and Exchange Commission's Division of Market Regulation. During his time with the SEC, Mr. Campion was responsible for administering and interpreting rules and regulations governing issuers, broker-dealers, and other market participants in connection with the offering, trading, and settlement of equity, debt, and derivatives. He also was responsible for analyzing requests for exemptive relief in connection with cross-border mergers and acquisitions and was consulted often by the Division of Enforcement to assist with investigations into violations of rules governing the offering and trading of securities. Mr. Campion assumed a leading role in several rulemaking initiatives, including new short sale regulation under Regulation SHO, Interpretive Guidance on Married Put Transactions, Decimalization, Regulation NMS, and the SEC's Hedge Fund Report.

Mr. Campion is a frequent speaker at securities industry conferences and has written prior articles related to short sale regulations, securities lending, and beneficial ownership reporting requirements. Mr. Campion is listed in *Chambers USA: America's Leading Lawyers for Business*, having received an "Up and Coming" ranking in the area of Financial Services Regulation: Broker Dealer (Compliance; Nationwide). Mr. Campion's team has received recognition for its work on complex matters, most recently when the firm was named the U.S. News—Best Lawyers "Law Firm of the Year" in Securities Regulation. The firm also received the most first-tier national rankings, including Securities Regulation, of any U.S. law firm in the 2011/12 U.S. News—Best Lawyers "Best Law Firms" survey.

Christopher D. Christian (Chapters 42B and 42D) is a partner at Dechert LLP, and advises U.S. and European asset managers and investment funds and their boards of directors, including U.S. registered funds, funds organized under the European Union directive on Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities (UCITS), and funds organized in other jurisdictions offered on a private basis. Mr. Christian's practice has a significant international component. He advises offshore funds on compliance with U.S. regulatory requirements, and routinely counsels European retail and institutional funds on organization, registration, corporate governance, and global distribution issues. He has assisted clients in coordinating offering advisory services and various types of investment funds in compliance with local law in jurisdictions in Europe, Asia, the Middle East, and Latin and South America.

Mr. Christian is Secretary of the Investment Funds Committee of the International Bar Association. He has spent considerable time working in Dechert LLP's London office and is a frequent conference speaker.

Robert L.D. Colby (Chapter 2) is Chief Legal Officer of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Inc. Prior to FINRA, Mr. Colby was a partner in Davis Polk's Washington, D.C. office, where he advised on complex regulatory and compliance matters involving securities and derivatives for broker-dealers, financial institutions, investment advisers, markets, and clearing organizations. Before joining Davis Polk in 2009, Mr. Colby served for seventeen years as Deputy Director of the Securities and Exchange Commission's Division of Trading and Markets, where he was responsible for the regulation of broker-dealers,

About the Contributors

securities markets, and clearing organizations. Previously, he was Chief Counsel of the Division and Chief of the Division's Branch of Market Structure. Mr. Colby is recognized as a leading lawyer by *Chambers USA 2010*, where he is identified as "greatly respected by peers and valued by clients for his 'fantastic, pragmatic advice' in the broker-dealer area." Mr. Colby graduated *summa cum laude* and Phi Beta Kappa from Bowdoin College, and earned his J.D., *cum laude*, from Harvard Law School.

Matthew B. Comstock (Chapter 37D) is a partner at Murphy & McGonigle PC. Mr. Comstock has a diverse practice covering all aspects of the broker-dealer and trading and markets business. He regularly advises broker-dealers, hedge funds, and other clients on a variety of transactional, compliance, and regulatory matters. His areas of expertise include broker-dealer financial responsibility, broker-dealer liquidations, securities credit regulation, compliance with self-regulatory organization rules, short selling, regulations governing market manipulation, securities lending, soft dollars, prime brokerage, and market structure. He has particular experience and expertise dealing with the provisions of the Dodd-Frank Act applicable to broker-dealers, including provisions relating to securities-based swap dealers. Mr. Comstock's recent significant matters include representing major financial services firms in matters relating to cross-border broker-dealer registration and operations issues, and in developing novel and complex investment products and services. Mr. Comstock was an attorney in the SEC's Division of Trading and Markets, where he held the positions of Branch Chief, Special Counsel and Staff Attorney in the Office of Financial Responsibility. He had responsibility for a variety of matters relating to broker-dealer net capital requirements, customer protection, broker-dealer books and records requirements, margin, and broker-dealer liquidations. Mr. Comstock earned his B.A. from the University of Pittsburgh, his M.B.A. from the University of Pittsburgh, Joseph M. Katz School of Business, his J.D. from the University of Pittsburgh School of Law, and his LL.M. from Universität Augsburg, Germany.

Frank J. Cuccio (Chapter 43) is a partner with Bressler, Amery & Ross. Mr. Cuccio practices in the firm's Securities Law Practice Group. He specializes in representing brokerage firms in retail litigation, regulatory proceedings and on various business issues. Mr. Cuccio is a member of the firm's Hiring Committee, Case Intake Committee,

and acts as the firm's Corporate Secretary. He has worked as a registered representative and a supervisor in brokerage operations. Mr. Cuccio has also been general counsel to two securities trading firms. In 1994, Mr. Cuccio clerked for the Honorable Daniel P. Mecca, J.S.C., in the New Jersey Superior Court, Bergen County. Mr. Cuccio earned his B.S. from Ramapo College of New Jersey and his J.D. from New York Law School.

Elliott R. Curzon (Chapters 22 and 45) is a partner with Dechert LLP. He concentrates his practice in broker-dealer regulation. Prior to his arrival at Dechert in 1999, Mr. Curzon spent twelve years at the National Association of Securities Dealers, where he served as assistant general counsel in the Regulatory Practice Group of the Office of General Counsel. He provided policy and legal advice to the boards, committees, and departments of the NASD in general securities law and broker-dealer regulation, including SEC, NASD, and exchange rules. He also developed rules and legal positions and provided interpretive advice in most areas of NASD broker-dealer regulatory activities, and he represented the NASD on securities industry committees, developing industry responses to regulatory issues, including clearing firm responsibilities, day trading, microcap fraud, clearance and settlement of transactions, and margin and other financial responsibility issues. He has spoken extensively on broker-dealer regulation issues, and is a graduate of San Diego State University (B.A., 1978) and the University of the Pacific McGeorge School of Law (J.D., 1983).

Harry S. Davis (Chapter 24) is a partner at Schulte Roth & Zabel LLP. Mr. Davis specializes in complex civil litigation, including securities law, regulatory and corporate disputes, antitrust and trade practices, intellectual property, auditor's and accountant's liability, bankruptcy and other commercial disputes.

Joshua D. Dick (Chapter 31A) is an associate in the Palo Alto office of Gibson, Dunn & Crutcher LLP. Mr. Dick is a member of the firm's Litigation Department and practices in its Securities Litigation Group. Mr. Dick has significant experience litigating a broad range of matters in both state and federal courts. He has successfully represented clients throughout the United States and abroad involving claims brought under the Securities Exchange Act, the California Unfair Competition Law, the Sherman and Clayton Acts, and the Foreign Corrupt

Practices Act. Mr. Dick also has extensive experience in the prosecution and defense of commercial contracts and business tort claims. Mr. Dick was recently a member of a trial team that obtained a complete defense verdict following a bench trial in a nation-wide class action. His other recent matters include: defending an unsolicited tender offer and related proxy contest launched by an international technology company; defending a major credit card company in a civil antitrust action; and defending a large, multi-national corporation in a FCPA investigation, including conducting an internal investigation in cooperation with the Department of Justice.

Mr. Dick graduated, *cum laude*, from the University of Michigan Law School, where he served as an associate and articles editor for the *Journal of Law Reform*. Mr. Dick is a member of the California and New York state bars. He is also admitted to practice before the U.S. District Court for the Southern District of New York.

Jack P. Drogin (Chapter 46) is a partner at Schiff Hardin LLP. Mr. Drogin's practice focuses on SEC and self-regulatory organization rules and requirements relating to the federal securities laws, broker-dealers, markets, and clearing agencies. He also advises investment advisers on the requirements under the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act. Mr. Drogin regularly advises clients on broker-dealer status issues, as well as on clearing arrangements and related matters, such as prime brokerage arrangements, credit and financing arrangements, and confirmation and account statement issues. He also advises broker-dealers on commission recapture and soft-dollar arrangements, as well as on the distribution of foreign research in the United States and the execution of securities transactions by foreign broker-dealers for U.S. persons. Mr. Drogin advises banks on securities activities permitted by the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act of 1999, as well as related credit and financing activities. He also advises exchange-traded fund (ETF) sponsors on the listing and trading of ETFs and similar products on U.S. markets. Prior to entering private practice, Mr. Drogin gained ten years of regulatory experience with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission. He served as Assistant Director in the Office of Market Supervision, Division of Market Regulation. In this position, he oversaw the National Association of Securities Dealers (now the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority) and national securities exchanges. Mr. Drogin received his B.A. from the University of Pennsylvania and his J.D. from Harvard Law School.

William D. Edick (Chapter 21) is a partner at Pickard Djinis and Pisarri LLP. He specializes in regulatory and enforcement matters involving broker-dealers, investment advisers, investment companies, hedge funds and issuers. Prior to joining the firm, he was an analyst with the Market Surveillance Department of the NASD, where he specialized in insider trading investigations.

Robert Evans III (Chapter 49) is a partner in the Capital Markets—Americas practice group of Shearman & Sterling. He has extensive experience in public offerings and private securities offerings. He advises corporate clients and investment banks on various corporate and securities law matters. He joined the firm in 1990 and became a partner in 1996. Mr. Evans received his A.B., *cum laude*, from Harvard College, and his J.D., *cum laude*, from Boston University School of Law.

Frances Faircloth (Chapter 31C) is an associate in Sidley Austin LLP's Complex Commercial Litigation and Privacy, Data Security and Information Law groups. Ms. Faircloth has represented clients in all phases of civil and criminal litigation, including enforcement actions, internal investigations, and trial and appellate court proceedings, and advises clients on matters of privacy and data security. Ms. Faircloth earned her law degree from Yale Law School, where she was managing editor of *The Yale Law Journal*. She received her B.A. and B.S., *summa cum laude*, from the University of Arkansas. Prior to joining Sidley, Ms. Faircloth clerked for the Honorable Scott M. Matheson, Jr., on the United States Court of Appeals for the Tenth Circuit.

Robert A. Fippinger (Chapters 39 and 40) was appointed Chief Legal Officer to the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board (MSRB) in March 2015. Previously, he had been a partner and senior counsel in the New York office of Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe and had specialized in the law of public finance since 1970. After receiving his undergraduate degree from Duke University and his law degree from the University of Michigan Law School, Mr. Fippinger received a Ph.D. in 1969 at Northwestern University in its law and politics program.

Mr. Fippinger was an adjunct professor at New York University law school where he taught the securities law of public finance, and he has taught the securities law of public finance at Hofstra Law School. He was a visiting lecturer in law at Yale University law school where he taught the law of public finance for a four-year period.

About the Contributors

In 2007, the National Association of Bond Lawyers awarded Mr. Fippinger its annual Friel Medal for distinguished service in public finance. In 2010, he was appointed to serve as a member of the MSRB, and was reappointed to a three-year term in 2014. He served on the Board until his appointment as Chief Legal Officer in 2015. Any information in this book related to rulemaking activity of the MSRB since October 1, 2010, is carefully restricted to information provided by the MSRB in its public notices and interpretations that are available on the MSRB website at www.msrb.org.

Logan S. Fisher (Chapter 43) is an associate with Bressler, Amery & Ross. Mr. Fisher practices in the firm's Securities Litigation and Regulatory Practice Group. His practice is primarily devoted to representing broker-dealers and registered representatives in securities litigation and securities arbitration, including customer-initiated complaints with self-regulatory organizations such as the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority (FINRA). He has assisted in litigating several complex matters related to auction rate securities. He also represents individuals and business organizations in matters before state and federal courts in New Jersey and New York.

A *magna cum laude* graduate of Duquesne University School of Law, Mr. Fisher served as Executive Editor of the *Duquesne Law Review*. While in law school, Mr. Fisher co-authored an article on Election Law that was published in the *Harvard Journal on Legislation*. He also began coursework toward his master's in Business Administration to be completed in the near future. He received his undergraduate degree in Business Administration from Temple University's Fox School of Business & Management.

David F. Freeman, Jr. (Chapters 4, 6 and 9) is a partner in the Financial Services Group of Arnold & Porter, LLP, based in Washington, D.C. His practice includes representing broker-dealers, investment managers, trust companies, banks and other financial institutions on regulatory, product, transactional, legislative and litigation matters. Mr. Freeman has authored a variety of books and articles on securities and bank regulatory issues. He received his J.D. and MBA from the University of Virginia, and is a member of the District of Columbia and Virginia Bars.

Kay A. Gordon (Chapter 18A) is a partner in the New York office of K&L Gates and concentrates her work in the Investment Management practice, with a particular emphasis on hedge funds, private equity funds and compliance-related matters involving registered advisers

and broker-dealers. She also advises clients on a broad range of securities and regulatory matters, as well as a variety of financial instruments and transactions, including managed accounts, credit facilities, joint ventures and derivative instruments. She also represents clients in investigations by the SEC and other regulators. Ms. Gordon was recently recognized by *Legal 500 US* in its 2009 Edition as a Leading Lawyer in Investment Fund Formation and Management.

K. Susan Grafton (Chapter 44) is a partner in K&L Gates LLP's Washington, D.C. and New York offices, and focuses her practice on advising broker-dealers and investment advisers on their business, regulatory, and compliance issues. Since 2010, *Chambers USA* has selected her as a leading lawyer for Financial Services Regulation: Broker-Dealer (Compliance).

Ms. Grafton represents clients in all aspects of broker-dealer and investment adviser registration with the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, and states, and counsels them on related structural, supervisory, financial, and operational issues. In addition, she advises clients on a wide variety of sales, trading, and operational compliance issues including research and other written communications; soft dollars and commission sharing arrangements; political contributions, outsourcing and expense sharing arrangements, Regulations M, ATS, NMS, and SHO; sponsored access and other electronic trading issues; large trader and position reporting, books and records requirements; and OATS and trade reporting. Ms. Grafton advises and advocates the views of broker-dealers, alternative trading systems, securities and options exchanges, and investment managers on market structure issues and the potential impact of legislative and regulatory developments. Most recently, she has been active in advising individual clients as well as industry groups on a variety of issues raised by the Dodd-Frank Act, including the uniform standard of care for broker-dealers and investment advisers, investment adviser regulation, municipal advisor and private fund adviser registration, swap execution facilities, and whistleblower protection. Ms. Grafton works closely with clients to develop and conduct in-house training on a variety of topics including financial services regulatory reform, insider trading and conflicts of interest, avoidance of "group" designations, short selling, Regulation M, electronic communications, marketing materials, and preparing for regulatory examinations. She also assists clients in developing firm-wide and business level supervisory and compliance policies and procedures.

About the Contributors

As part of the Securities Enforcement Practice, Ms. Grafton represents broker-dealers and investment advisers before the SEC, self-regulatory organizations, and the states in enforcement matters and examinations involving a variety of issues. Ms. Grafton counsels the firm's corporate clients on capital markets issues, including strategic investments in securities exchanges and broker-dealers, corporate buy-backs, Regulations M and SHO, Section 13(f), and other transactional issues. She also advises credit rating agencies on legislative and regulatory developments affecting their activities.

Cheryl L. Haas (Chapter 8) is a partner in McGuireWoods LLP. She focuses her practice in the areas of securities litigation and enforcement, representing investment companies, investment advisors, broker-dealers and individuals in a wide range of securities matters with emphasis on regulatory enforcement and litigation involving the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission, NASD, the New York Stock Exchange, state regulatory agencies and numerous federal and state courts and arbitrations. She regularly advises clients on compliance and defense matters, and investigations related to violations of federal and state securities laws and regulations and NASD Rules.

Michaelene Hanley (Chapter 31C) is an associate in Sidley Austin LLP's Privacy, Data Security and Information Law group. Ms. Hanley has experience litigating and counseling on a broad range of matters including domestic and international laws and regulatory guidance regarding data disclosure, consumer and child protection, advertising, surveillance, cross-border data flows, data breach incident response, and other related topics. She earned her law degree from Indiana University Maurer School of Law. While in law school, Ms. Hanley served as research assistant to Professor Fred Cate, Director of Center for Applied Cybersecurity Research and acted as the executive business editor for the *Indiana Journal of Global Legal Studies*.

Issa J. Hanna (Chapter 32) is an associate with Eversheds Sutherland in New York City. Mr. Hanna counsels investment advisers, broker-dealers, and investment funds on compliance with federal and state securities laws and regulations, and self-regulatory organization rules. He also advises life and annuity insurers on securities issues associated with the management and distribution of variable products and on other regulatory issues under state insurance laws.

Before joining the firm as an associate, Mr. Hanna participated in Eversheds Sutherland's Summer Associate Program in 2008, where he

assisted primarily with matters relating to investment advisers, broker-dealers, and investment funds. During law school, he also served as a law clerk in the Civil Division of the Office of the U.S. Attorney for the Middle District of Florida, and as an extern in the County Attorney's office in Alachua County, Florida. Mr. Hanna received a B.A. from Duke University, and J.D., *cum laude*, from the University of Florida Levin College of Law, where he served as a Board Member of the *Florida Law Review*.

Dr. Andrew J.H. Henderson (Chapter 42C) is a partner in Eversheds Sutherland LLP's financial institutions group. Dr. Henderson specializes in financial services regulation with over fifteen years of experience as a financial services lawyer. He co-leads Eversheds Sutherland LLP's non-contentious financial services regulation practice and works closely with the firm's Financial Services Consulting business. In addition to the legal directories referred to below, he is recommended in the *IFLR 1000*.

Dr. Henderson advises international asset managers, investment advisers, depositaries and custodians, investment banks, broker-dealers, and banks on all aspects of EU and UK financial services regulation. This includes advisory, project, and transactional work in connection with the Markets in Financial Instruments Directive, the Capital Requirements Directive and Regulation, the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Directive, the UCITS Directive, the Market Abuse Directive and Regulation, governance and the Senior Managers Regime, the Retail Distribution Review, and issues relating to the protection of client assets and client money, particularly those arising from FCA Policy Statement 14/9.

Dr. Henderson also works closely with colleagues in the financial services disputes and investigations group, having started his career as a contentious financial services lawyer. This includes, most recently, support in LIBOR related investigations, conduct risk reviews, a significant enforcement action relating to breaches of the FCA Client Asset Rules, and a skilled persons review of an asset manager's client money arrangements.

He has been twice seconded to the UK Financial Services Authority, the Secretariat to the Bank of England Financial Markets Law Committee, and to the compliance department of an international investment bank. He has contributed to various academic and practitioner texts since 2000, including most recently *Gore-Browne on EU Company Law* (Jordans: 2015) and *Financial Services Law* (3rd ed.) (OUP:

2014). Dr. Henderson was a college law lecturer at the University of Cambridge where he obtained a Ph.D. in public law.

John R. Hewitt (Chapters 12 and 33) is with Kelley Drye & Warren LLP where he specializes in securities litigation and regulatory advice and counsel to broker-dealers, investment banks, investment companies and investment advisors. He is the co-editor and an author of *Securities Practice @ Electronic Technology*, a treatise that addresses every facet of the use and regulation of electronic technology in the securities markets. Mr. Hewitt has written extensively on the regulation of electronic technology in the securities markets, including a series of articles for the *New York Law Journal* on this subject, and has co-chaired and spoken at numerous seminars on it. Mr. Hewitt is the 1998 recipient of the Financial NetNews Internet Compliance Person of the Year award, was a participant in the Securities and Exchange Commission's roundtable discussions on internet issues and is listed on the International Who's Who of E-Commerce Lawyers. Mr. Hewitt was formerly a Senior Vice President/ Associate General Counsel with Lehman Brothers and a Senior Counsel with the SEC's Division of Enforcement. He has a Master of Laws in Securities Regulation from the Georgetown University Law Center.

Jeffrey O. Himstreet (Chapter 37) is affiliated with Prudential Investment Management, Inc. Prior to Prudential, he was Regulatory Counsel of CIT Group, Inc. and of counsel with Bingham McCutchen LLP. Mr. Himstreet's practice concentrates on regulatory counseling concerning securities market and regulatory issues for investment advisers, dual registrants, broker-dealers, mutual funds and others in the financial services industry. He has provided securities enforcement defense before the SEC, FINRA, and other SRO and state regulators for members of the financial services industry. He also conducts internal investigations and defends securities litigation.

Before rejoining Bingham in 2011, Mr. Himstreet held two in-house positions, first serving as the chief investment advisory support for a dual registrant with \$92 billion in managed assets and second as the chief legal officer for a bank-affiliated wealth management division, overseeing all legal and compliance functions for an affiliated investment company, investment adviser, private bank, broker-dealer and trust company (offering both personal and institutional trust services). Prior to joining Bingham in 2000, Mr. Himstreet was a lawyer with the SEC's Division of Investment Management in the Office of Investment Adviser Regulation. Mr. Himstreet has an LLM in securities regulation, *with honors*, from Georgetown University Law Center.

Ronald A. Holinsky (Chapter 11) is Vice President, Chief Compliance Officer, and Assistant General Counsel of Lincoln Financial Group. Mr. Holinsky has been practicing securities law since 1997. Mr. Holinsky recently served as Director & Associate General Counsel for Legg Mason in Baltimore and as Deputy General Counsel for Legg Mason Investor Services, LLC. He served as a Senior Associate for K&L Gates LLP within the firm's Investment Management, Broker-Dealer and Private Funds/Hedge Funds practice groups. He also has served as Senior Counsel in the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission's (SEC) Division of Investment Management and Attorney-Adviser in the SEC's Office of Compliance Inspections and Examinations. Mr. Holinsky received his law degree from the University of Baltimore School of Law, *cum laude*, in 1996 and his undergraduate degree in business administration from West Virginia University in 1992.

Ki P. Hong (Chapter 40A) is a partner in the Political Law Group at Skadden, Arps, Slate, Meagher & Flom LLP. Mr. Hong advises major corporations on the unique political law issues they face when engaging in government affairs or government procurement activity. These include federal and state campaign finance, lobbying, gift, ethics, and conflict-of-interest laws. He also advises clients on pay-to-play laws that impose special restrictions on the political activity of companies that have or seek government contracts, as well as their covered employees. Mr. Hong advises clients on establishing and maintaining comprehensive systems to ensure compliance with those laws. In addition, he represents clients at the enforcement stage. Mr. Hong represents the "Big Four" accounting firms and leaders in a wide range of different industries, such as technology, energy, media, insurance, and communications. He also represents nine of the top ten U.S. banks and nearly all of Wall Street.

Mr. Hong co-authored the *Ethics Handbook for Entertaining and Lobbying Public Officials* and several chapters of the Practising Law Institute's publication "Corporate Political Activities." He also co-authors PLI's *Corporate Political Activities Deskbook*. Mr. Hong consistently has been selected for inclusion in *Chambers USA: America's Leading Lawyers for Business*, and *Washingtonian Magazine* repeatedly has recognized him as a top lawyer in the field of ethics and election law. Mr. Hong received his B.A., *cum laude*, from Cornell University, and J.D., *cum laude*, from Harvard Law School.

Peter M. Hong (Chapter 48) is a partner at Stradley Ronon Stevens & Young, LLP. Mr. Hong advises clients in matters pertaining to the registration and regulation of registered and private investment companies, investment advisers, broker-dealers, commodity trading advisors and commodity pool operators under federal and state laws. His practice includes providing advice regarding compliance with regulations of federal and state securities and commodities regulatory authorities and self-regulatory organizations such as the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority and the National Futures Association. In addition, Mr. Hong also advises clients in the formation of domestic and offshore hedge funds, including preparation of private placement memoranda, operating agreements and subscription documents; preparation and negotiation of related service provider contracts; and compliance with state blue sky filing requirements.

Prior to joining the firm, Mr. Hong served as special and senior counsel at the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission. During his tenure as special counsel in the Division of Investment Management, he actively participated in and influenced positions taken with respect to legislation or rulemaking regarding investment company disclosure regulation. He also served as senior counsel in the Office of Chief Counsel for the SEC's Division of Enforcement. In addition, Mr. Hong investigated and prosecuted violations of the Commodity Exchange Act and its related rules as a trial attorney for the U.S. Commodity Futures Trading Commission, Division of Enforcement in Washington, D.C.

Mr. Hong received his B.A. from Dickinson College, and his J.D. from American University Washington College of Law.

Joshua Horn (Chapter 42H) is a partner and co-chair of the Securities Industry Practice at the national law firm of Fox Rothschild LLP. He represents major financial services companies throughout the country and guides financial advisory companies, broker-dealers, individual advisors, representatives, and counselors through FINRA examinations, enforcement, and arbitrations. Mr. Horn has also represented individual brokers on disciplinary matters before FINRA and state securities commissions, as well as companies and individuals in SEC investigations. His clients include the premier merchant card processing company, for whom he handles various matters, including class actions, throughout the United States. Mr. Horn also represents clients in connection with trademarks and trade secrets, professional ethics, data security, the Fair Debt Collection Practices Act and the Fair Credit Reporting Act. Mr. Horn is a frequent

blogger on Fox Rothschild's Securities Compliance Sentinel blog (<http://securitiescompliancesentinel.foxrothschild.com>), and has authored a number of guidebooks and other reference materials for financial advisors. He received his J.D. from Widener Law School and his B.A. from Skidmore College.

Thomas M. Johnson, Jr. (Chapter 31A) is an associate in Gibson, Dunn & Crutcher LLP's Washington, D.C. office. He practices in the firm's Litigation Department and is a member of the Labor and Employment and Appellate and Constitutional Law Practice Groups.

Mr. Johnson received his law J.D., *magna cum laude*, from Harvard Law School, where he was Deputy Editor-in-Chief of the *Harvard Journal for Law and Public Policy* and won the Irving Oberman Memorial Award for his third-year paper on separation of powers. Before joining the firm, he clerked for one year for the Honorable Jerry E. Smith on the Fifth Circuit Court of Appeals in Houston, Texas. Mr. Johnson received a B.A. in Government, *magna cum laude*, from Georgetown University in 2002. Mr. Johnson is admitted to practice in New York and the District of Columbia.

Katherine L. Kelly (Chapter 32A) is an associate in the Washington, D.C. office of Eversheds Sutherland. Ms. Kelly is a securities litigator who principally represents broker-dealers, investment advisers and individuals in examinations, investigations, and enforcement actions involving the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), Financial Industry Regulatory Authority (FINRA), and other regulators. In addition, Ms. Kelly represents clients in securities-related arbitrations and litigation, and counsels clients on regulatory and compliance matters.

Before joining Eversheds Sutherland, Ms. Kelly was a fellow with the American Civil Liberties Union of Maryland, where she gained experience in civil rights issues related to housing, free speech and education. Ms. Kelly also participated in the firm's 2008 Summer Associate Program. She has been named to the 2012 *Capital Pro Bono Honor Roll*. Ms. Kelly received her B.A. from St. John's College, and her J.D. from Vanderbilt University Law School.

Katie Klaben (Chapter 37C) is an associate in the Securities and Futures Regulatory Group in the Washington, D.C. office of Sidley Austin LLP. Ms. Klaben graduated *summa cum laude* from the American University Washington College of Law, where she served

as a fellow for both the Legal Rhetoric Program and the Marshall-Brennan Constitutional Literacy Project. She earned her B.S. in Business Administration, with a focus on finance and international business, from the Georgetown University McDonough School of Business. Prior to joining the firm, Ms. Klaben worked in the Office of Compliance Inspections and Examinations in the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission. She also spent three years at SNL Financial, where she managed the Specialized Financial Services division.

Susan Krawczyk (Chapters 13 and 14) is a partner in the Washington, D.C. office of Eversheds Sutherland. She focuses on regulatory and compliance issues for broker-dealers, investment advisers, insurers and other financial service providers in the retail, institutional and retirement markets. She works with firms in developing marketing materials, establishing marketing and compensation arrangements, and implementing appropriate compliance systems and procedures. She has been closely involved with numerous organizations in the establishment of broker-dealer firms and advisers and has developed and conducted training programs for all “levels” in broker-dealer firms, from sales reps to field supervisors, to home office personnel and boards of directors of broker-dealer firms. She represents clients before the Securities and Exchange Commission and the National Association of Securities Dealers, Inc., is a member of the NASD Variable Insurance Products Committee, and participates on other industry committees focusing on sales and marketing practices. She is a member of the District of Columbia Bar and the Virginia State Bar, and received a J.D. degree in 1984 from the George Washington University National Law Center.

Sean E. Kreiger (Chapter 35) is Director, Compliance of Babson Capital Management LLC. Mr. Kreiger recently served as CCO of QVT Financial LP. He served as Vice President, Assistant General Counsel, Global Head of Policies and Procedures for AIG Investments. He worked as an associate in Kirkpatrick & Lockhart LLP’s New York office. Mr. Kreiger was also an attorney for the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission, Division of Enforcement where he investigated, developed and litigated cases involving violations of the federal securities laws. He is a graduate of the Georgetown University Law Center (LL.M., 2000, Securities and Financial Regulation), University of Baltimore School of Law (J.D., 1999), and University of Maryland at College Park (B.A., 1996).

Neil S. Lang (Chapter 36) is a partner with Eversheds Sutherland. Mr. Lang represents public companies, their officers and directors, brokers, investment advisers and individuals in government and regulatory investigations, enforcement and litigation involving, among others, the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), the Department of Justice (DOJ), state regulatory agencies, the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority (FINRA) and private litigants. He advises public companies, broker-dealers, investment advisers and financial institutions on federal and state regulatory matters, disclosure issues and compliance matters.

A member of Eversheds Sutherland's Litigation practice group, Mr. Lang helped build the firm's Securities Enforcement and Litigation and White Collar Defense Practice teams. He has more than twenty-five years of experience in securities enforcement, compliance, corporate governance disclosure issues, internal investigations and litigation.

A former chief trial attorney for the Division of Enforcement of the SEC, Mr. Lang has litigated dozens of cases involving allegations of financial fraud, fair value improprieties, market manipulation, insider trading, accounting irregularities and proxy violations. He was also an Executive Vice President and General Counsel of a publicly traded financial institution. He brings years of enforcement, regulatory and business experience to his practice, as well as an insider's working knowledge of the SEC's perspectives and public company internal dynamics and pressures.

Ernesto A. Lanza (Chapter 37E) is Senior Counsel to Clark Hill PLC. Mr. Lanza focuses his practice on public finance matters, with a particular emphasis on securities law, disclosure and municipal securities market structure issues. He works with broker-dealers, municipal advisors, state and local governments, investors, trade groups, industry vendors, and other key market structure entities on a broad range of municipal bond and 529 college savings plan market matters. In addition, Mr. Lanza has transactional experience working as bond counsel to state and local governments as well as underwriter's counsel on numerous public sector capital financings for a wide variety of public infrastructure, health care, single and multifamily, and other private activity projects totaling in excess of \$10 billion.

Previously, Mr. Lanza was the Deputy Executive Director for the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board (MSRB). As second ranking MSRB executive, he served several key senior executive functions, including overseeing market structure matters, transparency initiatives, development of the MSRB's economic analysis policy, research

initiatives (internal MSRB publications and the MSRB-commissioned Report on Secondary Market Trading in the Municipal Securities Market) and governmental affairs functions. Prior to his time as Deputy Executive Director, Mr. Lanza served as the MSRB's Chief Legal Officer/General Counsel responsible for all organizational legal and rulemaking matters, including board and staff governance issues; regulatory and compliance issues; contractual, intellectual property and other corporate legal matters; and regulatory coordination with the Securities and Exchange Commission and the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority. Mr. Lanza conceived and led the design, development, and initial launch of the MSRB's Electronic Municipal Market Access (EMMA) website, and was responsible for the MSRB's strategic vision for municipal market transparency initiatives. He also developed the broker-dealer regulatory framework for the 529 college savings plan market and was responsible for interpreting the MSRB's landmark pay-to-play rule.

Mr. Lanza received his B.A., *cum laude*, from Harvard University, and his J.D. from the University of Pennsylvania Law School, where he was editor of the *University of Pennsylvania Law Review*.

Stuart D. Levi (Chapter 31) is a partner and co-head of the Intellectual Property and Technology Group at Skadden, Arps, Slate, Meagher & Flom LLP, and heads the firm's outsourcing practice. He has a broad and diverse practice that includes outsourcing transactions, technology and intellectual property licensing, technology transfers, strategic alliances and joint ventures. Mr. Levi also counsels clients on a variety of issues, including intellectual property matters, privacy issues and legislative compliance. His background in computer science and the information technology industry allows Mr. Levi to understand the technology and business drivers underlying agreements and transactions in this area.

In the outsourcing arena, Mr. Levi handles a wide variety of transactions, including the outsourcing of: data centers; infrastructure and desktop support; application development and maintenance; business processes; HR and benefits; recruitment and relocation services; financial services processing; and call centers. His experience also stretches across a broad range of industries, including financial services, insurance, manufacturing, telecommunications, energy, consulting, travel, media and publishing. Mr. Levi supports clients through all stages of an outsourcing project—from preparing the initial RFP and facilitating vendor selection to negotiating all aspects of the definitive agreement and schedules—and is actively involved in the

legal, business and technology components of each outsourcing deal he handles.

Keith Loveland (Chapter 28) is an attorney with Loveland Consulting and is a nationally recognized author, attorney, consultant, and teacher within the fields of investments, securities and securities offerings, ethical versus fraudulent practices regarding investments and securities, and fiduciary matters. He has been qualified as an expert regarding the above matters in state and federal courts, and in AAA and NASD/FINRA arbitrations, and also has served as an arbitrator and qualified neutral mediator.

Mr. Loveland served as a subject matter expert to the New York Stock Exchange Qualification Committee from 1983 to 2001 as to all matters related to business entity formation and offerings of investments, among other matters. He currently serves as a subject matter expert to the North American Securities Administrators' Association as to the requirements necessary for offerors of investments and securities under state law, and fraudulent practices related thereto, among other matters.

Mr. Loveland has been a teacher for many years. Among other engagements, he was Adjunct Professor, William Mitchell College of Law, from 1978 to 1987. He is currently Adjunct Faculty for The Center for Fiduciary Studies, teaching the Prudent Practices for Investment Stewards.

Mr. Loveland is a member of the American Bar Association, Business Law Section, Committee on Federal Regulation of Securities, and Committee on State Regulation of Securities. He has been a member of the Financial Planning Association since 1983, serving on their Board of Directors from 2011 to 2013. He was a recipient of their Heart of Financial Planning Award in 2010. Mr. Loveland earned his B.A. from the University of Minnesota, Duluth, and his J.D. from William Mitchell College of Law. He is admitted to practice law in Minnesota, as well as the Federal District Court and the Court of Appeals.

Steven S. Lucas (Chapter 38) is a partner with Nielsen Merksamer Parrinello Gross & Leoni LLP, and specializes in political law, including campaign, election, lobby and ethics laws in various federal, state and local jurisdictions. He specializes in state and local ballot measures, and maintains a fifty-state national compliance practice in the area of campaign and lobby law. As a lecturer in law at Stanford Law

School, he teaches “Law and Politics” and “Election Law” for second- and third-year law students. He is also on the faculty of, and an author for, the Practising Law Institute’s “Advanced Compliance and Ethics Workshop,” addressing national campaign and lobby compliance and pay-to-play issues. Since 2003, Mr. Lucas has served on the Board of Directors of Stillwater Mining Company (NYSE:SWC), a company that mines platinum and palladium in Montana and is developing gold, PGM and copper mines in Canada and Argentina. He serves as the Chairman of the Compensation Committee, as well as a member of the company’s Audit Committee. Mr. Lucas previously served at the appointment of the Governor of California as Chairman of the Bipartisan Commission on the Political Reform Act. He is a past president of the California Political Attorneys Association. He has also served on the California Secretary of State’s Task Force on Online Disclosure, as well as the FPPC Chairman’s Advisory Task Force.

Mr. Lucas has published numerous opinion-editorial columns relating to constitutional and other legal issues in the *Los Angeles Times* as well as other California newspapers, and has experience working for federal and state public officials and political campaigns. Mr. Lucas received his law degree from Harvard Law School, *magna cum laude*, where he was cross-enrolled at the John F. Kennedy School of Government, Institute of Press, Politics and Public Policy. He received a B.A. in Economics/Business, *magna cum laude*, from the University of California, Los Angeles, and is a member of Phi Beta Kappa.

Richard D. Marshall (Chapter 35) is a partner in Ropes & Gray’s New York office. Since entering private practice, Mr. Marshall has conducted compliance reviews of investment companies, investment advisers, and broker-dealers; represented individuals and regulated entities in investigations by the Securities and Exchange Commission and self-regulatory organizations; created hedge funds; and provided advice and sought no-action relief for investment companies, investment advisers, and broker-dealers. Before joining the firm, Mr. Marshall had been Senior Associate Regional Administrator in the New York office of the Securities and Exchange Commission. In that position, Mr. Marshall supervised a staff of seventy that conducted inspections of investment companies and advisers in the New York region and oversaw enforcement matters related to those entities. Mr. Marshall has also been a branch chief in the Division of Enforcement of the Securities and Exchange Commission in Washington, D.C. He speaks and writes regularly on topics related to the federal securities laws and is the editor

of *The Investment Lawyer*, a legal publication devoted to issues related to money management.

Ben Marzouk (Chapters 7 and 10) is an associate in the Washington, D.C. office of Eversheds Sutherland. Mr. Marzouk is a financial services attorney who advises broker-dealers and investment advisers on their regulatory compliance matters with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) and the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority (FINRA), as well as state rules and regulations. Before joining Eversheds Sutherland as an associate, Mr. Marzouk participated in the firm's Summer Associate Program in 2010 where he assisted primarily with financial services matters. He previously worked as an analyst for a global consulting firm where he analyzed testing documents as part of a large-scale SAP implementation for the United States Army's financial branch. Mr. Marzouk is admitted to the Virginia State Bar. His work is supervised by District of Columbia bar members. He received his B.A., *magna cum laude*, from the College of William and Mary, and his J.D. from the University of Virginia School of Law, where he served as President of the William Minor Lile Moot Court Board, and on the Editorial Board of *The Virginia Journal of Social Policy & the Law*.

Carol T. McClarnon (Chapter 42 and Chapter 42 Summary) is a special attorney in the Washington, D.C. office of Eversheds Sutherland. Ms. McClarnon has more than twenty years of experience providing legal guidance on ERISA and tax compliance to both employers and employee benefit service providers. A member of Eversheds Sutherland's Tax Practice Group, Ms. McClarnon typically advises financial services companies on ERISA and tax issues that impact their retirement services and insurance product operations. In addition, she routinely works with securities counsel to perform legal analyses on cutting-edge annuity and retirement plan products that are under development. Ms. McClarnon represents plan sponsors and service providers before the Internal Revenue Service (IRS) and the Department of Labor, obtaining prohibited transaction exemptions, private letter rulings and/or voluntary compliance relief. She works with the full range of retirement plans for both public and private employers. She has been active in the American Bar Association, where she served as a vice chair of the Employee Benefits Law Committee of the Tort and Insurance Practice Section and as a member of the Employee Benefits Committee of the Section of Taxation.

About the Contributors

Douglas F. McCormack (Chapter 31C) is counsel in Sidley Austin LLP's Investment Funds, Advisers and Derivatives group. Mr. McCormack has over sixteen years of legal experience and he focuses on legal and regulatory matters related to U.S.-registered investment companies (with an emphasis on money market mutual funds), distribution, compliance, sub-advisory relationships and related matters. He is recommended in Alternative/hedge funds and Mutual/registered funds in the 2013 edition of *The Legal 500 U.S.* and in Mutual/registered funds in the 2016 edition. Mr. McCormack earned an A.B. degree in Philosophy and a certificate of concentration in Latin from Princeton University in 1995 and a J.D. degree from Harvard Law School in 1998. Prior to joining Sidley, Mr. McCormack was a Director in the Legal & Compliance Department at BlackRock (2007–2012) and an associate in the New York office of an international law firm (1998–2007).

Sean P. McDonnell (Chapter 31B) is an associate in Mayer Brown's Washington, D.C. office and a member of the Litigation & Dispute Resolution practice. He has experience in a wide variety of civil and criminal matters, ranging from contractual disputes to complex regulatory enforcement actions. Mr. McDonnell also has substantial investigation experience, having assisted in the conduct of internal investigations related to SEC and Department of Justice activity on behalf of corporate clients.

Mr. McDonnell was also a member of the litigation team that successfully represented then-candidate Rahm Emanuel against residency challenges to his mayoral candidacy, culminating in a unanimous decision in the Illinois Supreme Court.

Prior to joining Mayer Brown, Mr. McDonnell served as law clerk to the Honorable Rebecca Pallmeyer of the United States District Court for the Northern District of Illinois. He graduated *magna cum laude* from Harvard Law School in 2009, where he was the Senior Policy Editor of the *Harvard Law and Policy Review*.

Mr. McDonnell has been a guest lecturer at Northwestern University School of Law on topics relating to the nexus between law and politics. He is an executive board member of the Democratic Party of Evanston and is active in the American Constitution Society.

Edward R. McNicholas (Chapter 31C) is co-leader of Sidley Austin LLP's global Privacy, Data Security, and Information Law practice, and has an extensive practice representing technologically sophisticated clients facing complex cybersecurity, privacy, and data challenges.

Commended by *The Legal 500 U.S.* for his “deep knowledge of privacy and information security,” he spearheads Sidley’s cyber crime focus and has significant experience with litigation and counseling matters involving privacy and data protection, cyber crime, cloud computing, the Internet of Things, data science, and national security.

Sidley’s Privacy, Data Security, and Information Law practice was named 2014 Privacy Practice Group of the Year by *Law360*, and Mr. McNicholas is frequently recognized as a leader in his field. The *National Law Journal* recognized Mr. McNicholas in its 2016 list of Cyber Security Trailblazers, and the Cybersecurity Docket included him on its inaugural “Incident Response 30” list of the nation’s best cybersecurity and data breach response lawyers. The *Washingtonian* named him in its inaugural listing of best Cybersecurity lawyers, he has been named in a *Computerworld* survey as one of the “Top 25 Privacy Experts” in the country, and he has been included in *The International Who’s Who of Internet, e-Commerce & Data Protection Lawyers* since 2011. *Chambers USA* has included him in its rankings of the country’s Leading Lawyers since 2008 and notes that he “impresses sources with his outstanding knowledge and responsive service . . . handling complex privacy matters in his trial and appellate practice.” *Chambers Global* has recognized the global reach of Mr. McNicholas’s data protection practice since 2011.

Mr. McNicholas frequently assists corporations with preparation for and responses to sophisticated cybersecurity incidents. For example, his practice includes representing major retailers experiencing congressional, litigation, and investigative challenges after cybersecurity attacks including in *Moyer v. Michaels Stores, Inc.*, 2014 WL 3511500 (N.D. Ill. 2014), and *Frank v. Neiman Marcus Group*, No. 1:14-cv-233 (E.D.N.Y. 2014). He also advises on cutting-edge Internet governance issues as part of Sidley’s counsel to working groups for the Internet Corporation for Assigned Names and Numbers (ICANN) during the transition of the Internet Assigned Names Authority (IANA) function.

Prior to joining Sidley, Mr. McNicholas served as an Associate Counsel to President Clinton. In that capacity, he advised senior White House staff regarding various Independent Counsel, congressional, and grand jury investigations. He has developed unique experience representing clients in the midst of media-driven legal challenges. His crisis management skills are particularly useful in coordinating the swirl of complex litigation, congressional hearings, and federal and

state investigations that can follow from major privacy and cybersecurity incidents.

A recipient of a 2010 Burton Award for Legal Achievement for one of his articles, Mr. McNicholas is a frequent lecturer and commentator on privacy, data security, and information law issues. He is the lead author of the *Federal Trade Commission Enforcement of Privacy and Data Security* (2014) and *Privacy and Security Issues in Cloud Computing* (2014). Many of his other articles and writings are gathered at www.Sidley.com/InfoLaw and on the Sidley privacy blog at www.DataMatters.Sidley.com.

He received his A.B., *summa cum laude*, from Princeton University and his J.D., *cum laude*, from Harvard Law School, where he served as an editor in the Supreme Court Office of the *Harvard Law Review*. He also served as a clerk for the Hon. Paul V. Niemeyer of the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Fourth Circuit.

William Michael, Jr. (Chapter 31B) is a partner with Mayer Brown LLP and Co-Chair of the White Collar Defense & Compliance practice group. He is an experienced trial attorney with more than 100 jury trials in state and federal courts focusing on complex federal white collar and regulatory defense, civil and criminal health care fraud, antitrust and complex internal investigations. Mr. Michael represents both individuals and corporations in these matters, including: internal investigations, criminal antitrust, health care, securities fraud, criminal tax, *qui tams*, money laundering, conspiracy, environmental, and the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act.

Charles R. Mills (Chapter 11) is a partner in Steptoe & Johnson LLP's Washington, D.C. office, where he practices in the Energy and Financial Services Groups. He represents a broad array of registered market intermediaries and advisers, financial and non-financial end users such as energy and other operating companies, commodity traders, and investment funds, and their directors, officers, and traders in regulatory matters, governmental investigations, litigation, and arbitrations. His practice focuses on regulatory counseling and representation in regulatory and enforcement matters before the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, the National Futures Association, the Securities and Exchange Commission, the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, and the principal futures, swaps, and securities exchanges and trading facilities.

Mr. Mills has extensive experience in defending investigations of alleged derivatives, commodities, and securities market abuses and violations of the laws and rules administrated and enforced by those agencies and self-regulatory organizations. Typical regulatory matters concern advocacy with respect to proposed agency rules, compliance training for derivatives, commodities and securities, registration, licensing, trade reporting, risk disclosure and other requirements, and preparing internal compliance policies, procedures, and controls. Litigation has included securities and commodities class actions.

Mr. Mills is the past Chair of the ABA's Derivatives and Futures Law Committee. He is on the Board of Editors of Thompson/West's *Futures & Derivatives Law Report*. He has served multiple terms on the executive committee of the Law and Compliance Division of the Futures Industry Association. He was an adjunct professor at the Georgetown University Law Center for twenty-one years, where he taught graduate-level courses in securities and derivatives law.

Mr. Mills is ranked by *The Best Lawyers in America* as a "Best Lawyer" for both Derivatives Law and Securities Capital Markets; by *Super Lawyers* for Administrative Law; and by Martindale-Hubbell as AV Preeminent. *Best Lawyers* named Mr. Mills as its "Lawyer of the Year" for Derivatives Law in 2012 and again in 2017 for the Washington, D.C.—Baltimore region, and the *Compliance Reporter*, a publication of *Institutional Investor*, honored Mr. Mills as one of its "Lawyers of the Year" for his precedent-setting victory in *WHX Corp. v. SEC*, 362 F.3d 854 (D.C. Cir. 2004). Prior to entering private practice, Mr. Mills served as a litigator and regulatory attorney in the Office of the General Counsel of the CFTC. He received his law degree from the Georgetown University Law Center in 1977 and his undergraduate degree from Occidental College in 1974.

Vivek K. Mohan (Chapter 31C) is a privacy and cybersecurity attorney in private practice. Mr. Mohan was most recently associated with Sidley Austin LLP's Privacy, Data Security, and Information Law practice group in the Washington, D.C. and Palo Alto, CA offices. His practice at Sidley focused on technology-related regulatory response and litigation, including privacy, cybersecurity, and information law issues. At Sidley, Mr. Mohan counseled major technology, healthcare, industrial, and telecommunications companies on privacy and security program management, cyber incident response, surveillance and information sharing, and attendant global public policy considerations.

About the Contributors

Mr. Mohan's experience includes work with major technology and data-driven clients to respond to governmental inquiries relating to product development, "Big Data," as well as to address national security—and surveillance-related issues. He has represented clients in matters before government agencies, including the FTC, SEC, FCC, state attorneys general, Department of Homeland Security, and Department of Justice, as well as in private litigation. He serves as guest faculty for Harvard's cybersecurity course offerings, and from 2011–2016, served as a fellow (and later nonresident associate) with the Cybersecurity Project at the Harvard Kennedy School.

Mr. Mohan has substantial experience with privacy and security issues confronting multinational corporations, including cloud computing, cross-border data flows, data localization, and data transfer agreements. While at Sidley, he spent six months embedded as a legal advisor to General Electric's Chief Privacy and Data Protection Officer, where he was responsible for the development, deployment, and restructuring of a global privacy and security program, ranging from the development and implementation of policies to contract negotiations.

Mr. Mohan has a particular focus on the emerging field of cybersecurity governance, regulation, and oversight, and serves as a key member on several high-profile internal investigations relating to cybersecurity incidents. He has worked with clients from the point an attack or breach is suspected through the process of incident response, including preparation for congressional testimony, response to government investigations, and associated litigation. He often serves as a technical liaison with forensic experts and internal information security personnel.

Mr. Mohan was a part of the Sidley team that advises working groups of the Internet Corporation for Assigned Names and Numbers (ICANN) on governance and accountability issues relating to the "stewardship transition" of the Internet Assigned Names Authority (IANA).

Mr. Mohan joined Sidley from the Harvard Kennedy School, where he was a Fellow at the Belfer Center for Science and International Affairs. At Harvard, he taught classes with professors from the Law School and School of Engineering and Applied Sciences that focused on privacy, cybersecurity, and Internet governance. In addition, he provided strategic advice to policymakers at the European Commission (on issues related to the development of cyber insurance markets),

and the Federal Communications Commission's Open Internet Advisory Committee (on "specialized services"). He has also held a special appointment with the Internet Bureau of the Office of the New York State Attorney General, and previously worked as an attorney at Microsoft's Innovation & Policy Center, based in Washington, D.C.

Mr. Mohan received his J.D. from Columbia Law School, where he served as Articles Editor for the *Columbia Science and Technology Law Review*. He earned his B.A. in Economics, *magna cum laude*, from the University of California, Berkeley. He is a Certified Information Systems Security Professional (CISSP) and a Certified Information Privacy Professional (CIPP/US, CIPP/E).

Bridget Moore (Chapter 16) is a partner in the Washington, D.C. office of Baker Botts L.L.P. Ms. Moore's practice focuses on securities enforcement, internal investigations, and white collar defense. In particular, she helps clients resolve enforcement matters brought by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC).

Prior to joining Baker Botts in May 2003, Ms. Moore worked as a staff attorney in the Division of Enforcement at the SEC. While at the SEC, she conducted investigations involving the antifraud provisions of the federal securities laws, proxy violations, insider trading and various disclosure and reporting violations. In addition, Ms. Moore participated in trials centering on the fraudulent promotion of stocks, earning her the Enforcement Division Director's Award for Trial Work.

Ms. Moore was short-listed as one of five national finalists for the "Up and Coming Regulatory Lawyer of the Year" award presented by *Chambers USA* (2012). She received her B.B.A. from Loyola College, and her J.D., *cum laude*, from Catholic University of America Columbus School of Law, where served as a Staff Member of the *Catholic University Law Review* and Deputy Vice Chancellor of the Moot Court Association, and received the ABA-BNA Award for Excellence in the Study of Labor and Employment Law.

Jeremy Moorehouse (Chapter 18) is a senior associate in WilmerHale's Securities Department, where he advises and represents broker-dealers, banks and other financial institutions, hedge funds, securities exchanges, and securities trade associations regarding compliance with federal and state securities laws and regulations, futures rules and regulations, and the rules of self-regulatory organizations. He works closely with clients to establish, maintain and revise retail and institutional compliance and supervisory policies and procedures.

About the Contributors

Mr. Moorehouse also assists clients in conducting internal investigations, responding to regulatory inquiries, and implementing business changes.

Mr. Moorehouse received his B.A. from Northwestern University, and his J.D., *magna cum laude*, from Loyola University Chicago School of Law, where he received Alpha Sigma Nu Honors, and served as Executive Editor of the *Loyola University Chicago Law Journal* and was a Member of the *Public Interest Law Reporter*. Mr. Moorehouse is admitted to practice in the District of Columbia and New York.

Michael C. Nicholas (Chapter 42E) is a partner in the Securities Regulation & Investment Products (SRIP) Group of McCarthy Tétrault LLP in its Toronto office. Mr. Nicholas's practice is devoted to securities law matters generally, with an emphasis on registration or licensing matters; dealer, adviser, investment fund manager, market intermediary and marketplace regulation; related compliance and enforcement matters; litigation support; the regulation and implementation of derivative transactions; the development of new financial products and trading strategies, including monetization transactions, issuer put options, block trades and accelerated and prepaid share repurchases; and the regulation, development, restructuring, termination and unwinding of collective investment vehicles, including mutual funds and hedge funds.

Since 1982, Mr. Nicholas has been engaged either in the practice of corporate/securities law with McCarthy Tétrault LLP or in a regulatory capacity with the Ontario Securities Commission or the Hong Kong Securities and Futures Commission. In July 1983, he was seconded to the Ontario Securities Commission by the firm, where he acted as legal advisor to the Commission and served as a member of the Commission's Corporate Finance Division until September 1984. From July 1989 to July 1992, Mr. Nicholas served as the Director of Corporate Finance for the Hong Kong Securities and Futures Commission, where he was responsible for regulating and developing policy in relation to takeover and merger transactions. Mr. Nicholas is a past member of the Securities Advisory Committee to the Ontario Securities Commission and a past member of the National Policy No. 36 Committee of the Investment Funds Institute of Canada. During 2004, Mr. Nicholas served as co-chair of the Compliance and Legal Working Group, one of the committees established by the Ontario Securities Commission to consider the Fair Dealing Model prior to its evolution into the CSA Registration Reform Project. He is a co-author of CCH's *Canadian Securities Regulatory Requirements Applicable to Non-Resident Broker-Dealers, Advisers and Investment Fund Managers*,

a handbook of Canadian securities regulatory requirements for non-resident securities firms published in 2012. Mr. Nicholas received his B.A. from the University of Guelph and his LL.B. from Queen's University. He was called to the Ontario bar in 1982.

Stephanie Nicolas (Chapters 15 and 27), a partner in the Broker-Dealer Regulatory and Compliance Group at WilmerHale, works with major investment banking firms, broker-dealers, and other financial institutions to develop comprehensive compliance and supervisory procedures for a range of broker-dealer activities, including research activities (analyst conflicts of interest), firm-wide supervision, information barriers ("Chinese Walls") and surveillance procedures, trading issues, and sales practice issues.

Grady Nye (Chapter 31C) is an associate in Sidley Austin LLP's Privacy, Data Security and Information Law group. Mr. Nye's practice focuses on issues related to privacy, cybersecurity, and consumer protection. He has experience counseling financial, healthcare, and energy companies on cybersecurity and privacy program management, data breach incident response, and regulatory compliance. He has also assisted with internal investigations related to various enforcement matters and has experience representing companies in Consumer Financial Protection Bureau enforcement actions. Mr. Nye earned his law degree at Stanford Law School and was a senior editor for the *Stanford Law & Policy Review*. He is fluent in Spanish.

Andre E. Owens (Chapter 18) is a partner in WilmerHale's Securities Department, a member of the Broker-Dealer Compliance and Regulation Practice Group and a former member of the Executive Committee. He joined the firm in 2003. Mr. Owens has a practice that focuses on market regulation and investment adviser activities. Mr. Owens served as a member of the Counseling and Regulatory Policy Group of the SEC's Office of General Counsel from 1992 to 1994, where he provided advice and recommendations on various proposals presented for Commission action, including proposed rulemaking actions, exemptive applications and enforcement matters. From 1994 to 1997, he served as Counsel to SEC Commissioner Steven M.H. Wallman and advised Commissioner Wallman on policy issues in the areas of market regulation and investment adviser activities, as well as on a variety of administrative law issues. After leaving the SEC in 1997, Mr. Owens returned to private practice. He currently counsels broker-dealer and other clients on a variety of market regulatory issues

such as compliance with SEC, FINRA and NYSE rules; Regulation M and Regulation NMS; short sale and other trading rules; sales practice and order handling matters; and Regulation ATS and electronic brokerage issues. Mr. Owens also provides advice with respect to acquisitions of securities broker-dealers and investment advisers. Mr. Owens is a member of the Business Law Section of the American Bar Association, the Securities Industry Financial Markets Association's Legal and Compliance Division and the National Association of Securities Professionals. He also taught a course entitled "The Regulation of Securities Professionals and the Securities Markets" at the Georgetown University Law Center.

Anna T. Pinedo (Chapter 42F) is a partner in Morrison & Foerster's New York office. Ms. Pinedo has concentrated her practice on securities and derivatives. She represents issuers, investment banks/financial intermediaries, and investors in financing transactions, including public offerings and private placements of equity and debt securities, as well as structured notes and other structured products. Ms. Pinedo works closely with financial institutions to create and structure innovative financing techniques, including new securities distribution methodologies and financial products.

Ms. Pinedo has been recognized as a leading capital markets lawyer and derivatives lawyer in a number of rankings and directories, including *Chambers Global*, *Chambers USA*, *Legal 500 U.S.* and *PLC Which Lawyer?* Ms. Pinedo received the Burton Award for Legal Achievement in Writing in 2007. She has been recognized by The Glass Hammer as one of the "Top Ten Hispanic Women in Business" and by *Hispanic Business* magazine as one of the "100 Most Influential Hispanics," as well as by *Crain's* "Forty Under 40" and *Investment Dealers Digest* (IDD) "Forty Under 40."

Andrew E. Porter (Chapter 11) is a partner in K&L Gates LLP's Washington, D.C. office. Mr. Porter focuses his practice on government enforcement matters, regulatory counseling, and internal investigations. He represents clients in matters before the Securities and Exchange Commission, the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, the Department of Justice, the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority and other regulatory entities. He has experience in counseling clients on complying with the federal securities laws and other regulatory requirements. Mr. Porter received his B.A. from the University of Michigan and his J.D. from Columbia University School of Law, where he was the Articles Editor of *Columbia Science and*

Technology Law Review. He is admitted to practice in the District of Columbia and New York.

Laura S. Pruitt (Chapter 3) is a partner in Alston & Bird LLP's Financial Services & Products Group, who counsels broker-dealers, investment advisers, self-regulatory organizations, and other market participants on securities law and market regulation issues, with particular emphasis on broker-dealer registration and compliance issues, trading rules, alternative trading systems, derivatives, investment adviser regulation, transfer agent rules, and anti-money laundering rules. Ms. Pruitt also represents a variety of clients before the Securities and Exchange Commission and self-regulatory organizations in connection with regulatory investigations and enforcement actions, and she has conducted independent compliance reviews in connection with the settlement of several enforcement actions. Ms. Pruitt spent several years at the Securities and Exchange Commission in Washington, D.C., both as senior counsel in the Office of the General Counsel (both as a litigator defending the Commission in federal court actions and in providing counsel to the General Counsel, and others, in connection with Commission rulemakings and enforcement actions) and as special counsel in the Office of the Chief Counsel in the Division of Market Regulation (now the Division of Trading & Markets). Ms. Pruitt earned her A.B. from Harvard University, and her J.D. from Columbia University. She is admitted to practice in the District of Columbia and New York.

Brynn M. Rail (Chapter 19) is counsel in the New York office of Ropes & Gray LLP. Ms. Rail represents U.S. and international broker-dealers on various regulatory and securities law issues, including registration, FINRA compliance, trading, margin, net capital, and clearance and settlement. In addition, Ms. Rail counsels investment advisers on the structuring and distribution of their private investment products, compliance with Advisers Act requirements, and issues relating to securities ownership filings required under the Exchange Act. She also has significant experience negotiating prime brokerage and custody agreements on behalf of those investment advisers and their clients. Ms. Rail also advises clients in connection with mergers and acquisitions involving broker-dealers and investment advisers, including conducting detailed reviews of the target's business and operations and preparing regulatory filings made in connection with those transactions.

Ms. Rail received her B.A. from Boston College and her J.D. from the University of Connecticut School of Law. She is admitted to practice in New York.

George Braxton Raine (Chapter 19) is a partner in the Boston office of Ropes & Gray LLP and a member of the firm's Investment Management Practice. His practice focuses on investment management regulatory matters, including the representation of investment companies and investment advisers. Mr. Raine was previously an associate in the New York and Frankfurt offices of Debevoise & Plimpton LLP. He is a graduate of Yale College (B.A., 1996), Yale Law School (J.D., 1999) and Humboldt-Universität zu Berlin (LL.M., 2000).

Jason C. Roberts (Chapter 42A) is the Founder and CEO of the Pension Resource Institute (PRI) providing strategic consulting and training to retirement plan service providers (broker-dealers, RIAs, investment managers, recordkeepers, TPAs, etc.) and fiduciary education to plan sponsors. He is primarily responsible for tactical planning and business development at PRI and actively leads many of PRI's consulting projects.

Prior to founding PRI, Mr. Roberts was a partner and co-chair of the Financial Services Group at Reish & Reicher—a leading ERISA law firm—where his practice focused on employee benefits and securities regulation. Mr. Roberts continues to provide counsel on ERISA and investment-related matters through the Law Offices of Jason C. Roberts, Esq. and is frequently retained as an expert witness on fiduciary claims. He represents clients in federal and state court at the trial and appellate level (including the U.S. Supreme Court), FINRA arbitrations and government enforcement proceedings.

Jerome J. Roche (Chapter 47) is a Financial Services Regulatory & Enforcement partner in Mayer Brown's Washington, D.C. office. His practice focuses primarily on cross-border financial services matters. He has extensive experience counseling clients regarding the U.S. federal securities laws, the Commodity Exchange Act, the Commodity Futures Modernization Act, the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, the USA PATRIOT Act, and the Dodd-Frank Act. According to *Chambers USA* 2013, Mr. Roche is a "dynamic lawyer" who has "good substantive knowledge." He also received a *Martindale-Hubbell* peer review rating of AV-Preeminent in 2012 and 2013.

David E. Rosedahl (Chapter 28) is Of Counsel, Business Litigation Section, Financial Markets Group of Briggs and Morgan, P.A. Mr. Rosedahl has more than thirty years of experience in the financial markets industry, specifically in the securities regulatory area. He practices primarily in the areas of regulatory compliance and enforcement, financial markets counseling, corporate governance, and dispute resolution. Mr. Rosedahl's unique background as a former chief regulatory officer of the Pacific Exchange; managing director and general counsel for Piper Jaffray Companies; and associate general counsel and corporate secretary for the Securities Industry Association allows him to provide a balanced perspective when advising clients concerning investment and financial services issues, regulatory investigations, enforcement actions, remedial work and general inquiries. He is a frequent speaker on securities matters and has taught securities litigation as an adjunct professor at William Mitchell College of Law. Mr. Rosedahl received his B.A. and J.D. from Columbia University, and is admitted to practice in Minnesota and New York, and is a member of the Minnesota and American bar associations.

Terence Rozier-Byrd (Chapter 37B) is special counsel in the New York office of Baker Botts L.L.P. Mr. Rozier-Byrd concentrates his practice on the representation of institutional investors, private investment fund sponsors and investment advisers on a wide array of transactional matters. Mr. Rozier-Byrd also advises clients regarding the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 and the Investment Company Act of 1940. Prior to attending law school, Mr. Rozier-Byrd worked as an equity research assistant at Salomon Smith Barney in New York.

Mr. Rozier-Byrd received his A.B. from Princeton University, and his J.D. from Boston University School of Law.

Brian L. Rubin (Chapters 32A and 36) is a partner with Eversheds Sutherland. He represents broker-dealers, investment advisers, investment companies, public companies and individuals being examined, investigated and prosecuted by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, and states. He also represents securities clients in litigation and arbitration, and counsels them on regulatory and compliance matters. In addition, Mr. Rubin conducts internal investigations. Before joining Eversheds Sutherland, he was Deputy Chief Counsel with the National Association of Securities Dealers' Enforcement Department, where he managed attorneys and examiners in the Washington, D.C. home office and in the district offices. Brian also was Senior Counsel in the SEC's Division

of Enforcement, where he investigated and prosecuted violations of federal securities laws. He was also Senior Counsel in the SEC's Division of Enforcement. Mr. Rubin received his B.S., *cum laude*, from the University of Pennsylvania's Wharton School of Business, and his M.A. in Economics and his J.D. from Duke University.

G. Philip Rutledge (Chapter 5A) is a partner of Bybel Rutledge LLP. As an AV-rated lawyer by Martindale Hubbell, his practice focuses on corporate and securities law, regulation of financial intermediaries, and representation before the SEC, FINRA and state securities regulators. Mr. Rutledge is a nationally recognized expert in securities regulation and was instrumental in shaping various provisions of significant U.S. financial services legislation, including the *Securities Markets Improvement Act of 1996*, the *Gramm-Leach-Bliley Financial Modernization Act of 1999*, the *Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002*, and the *Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act of 2010*. When in government, Mr. Rutledge served as an expert witness on behalf of the Pennsylvania Office of the Attorney General in civil securities litigation and has testified as a securities expert before the U.S. Senate Permanent Subcommittee on Investigations. In private practice, he has been engaged as an expert witness in FINRA arbitration proceedings and in civil litigation.

Russell D. Sacks (Chapter 49) is a partner in the global Financial Institutions Advisory & Financial Regulatory Group of Shearman & Sterling. Mr. Sacks provides advice to market participants on a worldwide basis with respect to regulatory, transactional, trading and markets issues, with particular emphasis on U.S. regulation of securities broker-dealers, alternative trading systems, clearing agencies, and exchanges.

Prior to joining Shearman & Sterling, Mr. Sacks served as law clerk to The Honourable Justice Allen M. Linden of the Federal Court of Appeal in Ottawa, Canada. Mr. Sacks received his B.A., *magna cum laude*, from Columbia College, and his LL.B., *with Honors*, from the University of Toronto, Faculty of Law.

Sean D. Sadler (Chapter 42E) is a partner in the Securities Regulation & Investment Products Group of McCarthy Tétrault LLP in its Toronto office. Since joining the firm in 1989, Mr. Sadler has been primarily engaged in a securities trading and adviser regulation practice, with particular emphasis on advising Canadian and non-resident dealers and advisers on the offering of their services in Canada, including structuring and regulation of collective investment

vehicles and the public and private offering of investment products and securities, retail mutual funds, institutional pooled funds, hedge funds, closed-end funds, separately managed accounts, wrap accounts, wealth management services, family offices and registered education savings plans. Mr. Sadler also regularly advises on securities law/IIROC/MFDA compliance and enforcement matters for registrants and on private placements, commodity futures and OTC derivatives trading, acquisitions, divestitures and reorganizations of registrants and the merger of investment fund complexes and the establishment of investment fund businesses. Mr. Sadler has, together with local counsel, assisted clients in establishing or restructuring investment funds in jurisdictions outside Canada, including Bermuda, British Virgin Islands, Cayman Islands and Mauritius.

For many years, Mr. Sadler has been a special lecturer in various securities law topics at the University of Windsor, the University of Western Ontario, Dalhousie University and Queen's University. He is a co-editor of CCH's *Annotated Ontario Securities Legislation*. He is also a co-author of CCH's *Canadian Securities Regulatory Requirements Applicable to Non-Resident Broker-Dealers, Advisers and Investment Fund Managers*, a handbook of Canadian securities regulatory requirements for non-resident securities firms published in 2012.

Mr. Sadler appears in the 2013 edition of *The Best Lawyers in Canada* in the areas of mutual funds law, private funds law and securities law, in the *International Who's Who of Private Funds Lawyers*, 2014 and in the *Who's Who Legal: Canada 2012* in the area of private funds. Mr. Sadler is recognized in Practical Law Company's 2011/2012 *Investment Funds Handbook* as a recommended lawyer in Canada and has appeared in the *Canadian Legal Lexpert Directory*, a guide to the leading law firms and practitioners in Canada, as a leading lawyer in the area of asset management and investment funds. He received his B.A. from the University of Toronto, his J.D. from the University of Windsor and his LL.M. in banking and financial services law from the Osgoode Hall Law School. Mr. Sadler was called to the Ontario bar in 1989.

Christopher M. Salter (Chapter 37A) is a partner in the Washington, D.C. office of Allen & Overy LLP. Mr. Salter's practice focuses primarily on advising financial institution clients, and specifically broker-dealers, investment advisers, private equity funds, and hedge funds on compliance with the federal securities laws and regulations

About the Contributors

and on compliance with the rules of the self-regulatory organizations (SROs), including the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority. Previously, Mr. Salter worked at the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) as an Attorney in the Division of Market Regulation. He also is a Certified Public Accountant who worked as an Audit Manager for the U.S. Government Accountability Office and as a Staff Accountant for KPMG Peat Marwick, where he obtained extensive accounting and financial regulatory experience.

Mr. Salter has extensive experience advising clients with respect to broker-dealer and investment adviser regulation. He routinely helps broker-dealers and investment advisers in registering with the SEC, the states, and becoming members of SROs. Mr. Salter routinely advises clients on their supervisory procedures and compliance policies, and assists clients with the development of their policies and procedures. He has extensive experience with compliance reviews and audits as well as internal investigations. Mr. Salter also represents clients in enforcement actions before the SEC, SROs, the U.S. Attorney's Offices, and the State Attorney General's Offices.

Betty Santangelo (Chapters 24 and 26) is of counsel at Schulte Roth & Zabel LLP. She specializes in representation of financial institutions, corporate entities and individuals in regulatory litigation before the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), Commodity Futures Trading Commission, the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, and other regulatory agencies, including federal and state criminal prosecutors' offices in the U.S. and in foreign jurisdictions. She has served as independent consultant with respect to SEC enforcement matters, conducts internal investigations, and advises financial institutions regarding Bank Secrecy Act, anti-money laundering, OFAC, federal securities law and corporate compliance issues.

Peter D. Santori (Chapters 21 and 21A) is currently Executive Vice President and Chief Regulatory Officer of the Chicago Stock Exchange, Inc. (CHX), and has served in this role since 2012. In this role, Mr. Santori is responsible for the regulatory oversight of all CHX Participants to ensure that the trading activity on the facilities of CHX complies with all applicable CHX and SEC rules and regulations. Mr. Santori also served as CHX's Chief Compliance Officer from 2012 to 2015, where he created, staffed and directed CHX's compliance function, and was responsible for establishing and implementing policies and procedures reasonably designed to ensure that CHX

fulfilled its compliance and regulatory obligations, and served as the primary point of contact for the SEC regarding CHX's compliance and regulatory obligations. Mr. Santori previously served as Senior Vice President and Chief Legal Officer of thinkorswim Group Inc. in 2008 and 2009. At thinkorswim, Mr. Santori provided oversight, guidance, and direction regarding all legal, compliance, and regulatory matters for thinkorswim Group Inc. and its subsidiaries, including Investools, Inc. Mr. Santori previously served at FINRA from 1994 to 2008, and 2010 to 2012, where he held positions of increasing responsibility, culminating with the position of Chief Counsel to the Market Regulation Department. Mr. Santori received a B.S. in Finance from Saint Joseph's University, an M.B.A. in International Business Administration from Temple University, a J.D. from the Widener University Law Center, and a Masters of Laws in Securities and Financial Regulation, and Taxation from the Georgetown University Law Center. Mr. Santori is a member of the Illinois, Maryland, New Jersey, and Pennsylvania bars.

Kimberly Beattie Saunders (Chapter 21A) is an associate in the Asset Management Group of Willkie Farr & Gallagher, LLP. She advises investment advisers, private funds, registered investment companies and their boards, broker-dealers, and other financial institutions regarding their regulation by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). In that capacity, she oversees the development and revision of compliance materials and management agreements; counsels broker-dealers on market regulation initiatives from the SEC and guides investment advisers through SEC examinations and enforcement proceedings; advises directors of registered fund complexes on Investment Company Act requirements; guides hedge fund advisers' transition into registered fund management; and seeks exemptive orders and no-action relief for operations outside the reach of the Investment Advisers and Investment Company Acts.

Prior to joining Willkie, Ms. Saunders was a counsel in the Washington, D.C. office of WilmerHale. Earlier in her career she served as a Senior Governments Relations Officer for the Chicago Transit Authority; and worked in the Executive Office of the Illinois Governor, serving as Senior Advisor for Economic Development and Infrastructure, Policy Advisor for Economic Development, and James H. Dunn, Jr. Memorial Fellow. Ms. Saunders received a B.S. from Northwestern University in 1999, and J.D. from Duke University School of Law in 2007, where she served as the Special Projects Editor of *Law and Contemporary Problems*.

Joseph P. Savage (Chapter 42G) is Vice President, Investment Companies Regulation, FINRA. Mr. Savage specializes in investment management, investment company, advertising and broker-dealer issues. Prior to joining FINRA, he was an Associate Counsel with the Investment Company Institute and Of Counsel with Morrison & Foerster LLP. Mr. Savage holds a B.A. from the University of Virginia, an M.P.P. from the University of California, Berkeley, and a J.D. from the University of California, Hastings College of the Law.

Lee A. Schneider (Chapter 19) is counsel in the New York office of Debevoise & Plimpton LLP. Mr. Schneider is a member of the firm's Corporate Department and is based in the New York office. He is the head of the broker-dealer regulatory practice and a member of the Financial Institutions and Banking Groups. He also specializes in financial technology issues. His practice includes the representation of both U.S. and non-U.S. broker-dealers, banks, private fund sponsors and financial services technology companies. He provides day-to-day counsel to these clients on a wide range of matters, including regulatory and enforcement issues, conduct of business questions and general corporate concerns. He also advises broker-dealers in the start-up phase of their existence, helping with their application for membership, initial structuring and development of policies and procedures. Mr. Schneider works with Debevoise transactional lawyers on structuring and negotiations when the deals involve financial services companies. He regularly assists both financial services companies and their vendors in negotiating technology agreements for all types of services. He is quoted frequently on issues affecting broker-dealers and other financial institutions in publications including *Bloomberg News*, *Law360* and the *Securities Lending Times*.

Prior to joining Debevoise, Mr. Schneider was General Counsel and a member of the Executive Committee at ConvergeX, a global technology firm specializing in proprietary software products and technology-driven execution services. Mr. Schneider previously served as the lead in-house counsel for broker-dealers at The Bank of New York, and prior to that worked as an associate for seven years, including as both a corporate and litigation associate, at a leading international law firm.

Mr. Schneider joined Debevoise in 2012. He received his J.D., *summa cum laude*, from American University Washington College of Law, and his B.A. in Economics from the University of Michigan. Mr. Schneider served as a Law Clerk for the Honorable Roger J. Miner with the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit.

Jason C. Schwartz (Chapter 31A) is a partner in the Washington, D.C. office of Gibson, Dunn & Crutcher LLP. He is a member of the firm's Labor and Employment Practice Group and its Litigation Department. He also serves in the firm's Office of General Counsel. Mr. Schwartz practices primarily in the areas of labor, employment and trade secret litigation. He was recognized as a recommended lawyer in labor and employment litigation and workplace and employment law counseling by *The Legal 500 U.S.* His practice includes the full range of labor and employment matters, including those involving wage-hour and discrimination laws, non-competition agreements and trade secrets, the Sarbanes-Oxley Act and other whistleblower protection laws, the Employee Retirement Income Security Act (ERISA), and the Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA). Mr. Schwartz has litigated employment matters in state and federal courts and administrative forums throughout the country, as well as in arbitration, has represented clients before federal, state and local regulatory agencies and has conducted sensitive internal investigations. Mr. Schwartz also has significant experience in administrative law and rulemaking. He served as counsel to the Fair Labor Standards Reform Coalition, and played a leading role in preparing comments on behalf of the business community relating to the U.S. Department of Labor's new overtime exemption regulations. He is also a member of the U.S. Chamber of Commerce Labor Relations Committee, and testified before Congress regarding OSHA enforcement programs on behalf of the U.S. Chamber of Commerce. Mr. Schwartz frequently speaks and writes on employment law and trade secret-related topics.

Mr. Schwartz earned his J.D., *magna cum laude*, from the Georgetown University Law Center, where he was elected to the *Order of the Coif* and received the George Brent Mickum, III Prize and the Charles A. Keigwin Award for the best academic record in first year courses. From 1995 to 1996, Mr. Schwartz worked as a Legislative Assistant to Congressman Jon D. Fox. Mr. Schwartz received a B.A., *cum laude*, in international affairs from the George Washington University. Mr. Schwartz is admitted to practice in the District of Columbia, Virginia and Maryland, as well as in numerous federal courts.

Lanny A. Schwartz (Chapter 2) is a partner with Davis Polk & Wardwell LLP and a member of the firm's Broker-Dealer and Market Regulation practice. He advises on securities compliance, regulatory, and transactional matters, and his clients include major international banks, broker-dealers, securities exchanges, and consulting firms. Prior to joining Davis Polk in 2005, Mr. Schwartz was Executive

About the Contributors

Vice President and General Counsel of the Philadelphia Stock Exchange. Previously, he was Managing Director and Counsel at Bankers Trust Company, concentrating in bank and broker-dealer regulation and investment banking, and an Associate at Cleary, Gottlieb, Steen & Hamilton. Mr. Schwartz speaks and writes regularly on securities market structure and regulatory issues, and was formerly a member of the Adjunct Faculty at Columbia Law School and an Instructor in the Wharton Executive Education/NASD Institute for Professional Development. Mr. Schwartz is listed as a leading lawyer in several legal industry publications, including *Chambers USA: America's Leading Lawyers for Business*, *American Lawyer Media's The New York Area's Best Lawyers*, and *Woodward/White's Best Lawyers in America*. He holds a B.A. (*summa cum laude*) from the University of Pennsylvania and his J.D. (*cum laude*) from New York University School of Law, and is admitted to practice in New York and Pennsylvania.

Elena Schwieger (Chapter 27) received her B.A. and M.A. from Georgetown University in 2003 and 2004, respectively. She graduated *magna cum laude* from Catholic University, Columbus School of Law in 2009 and is currently an associate in the Broker-Dealer Regulatory and Compliance Group at WilmerHale.

Andrew C. Small (Chapter 28) is General Counsel & Chief Compliance Officer for Craig-Hallum Capital Group, a research, trading and investment banking firm. Prior to joining Craig-Hallum, Mr. Small was Chief Legal and Risk Officer for Scottrade Financial Services, Inc., a leading online brokerage, and Vice President and Compliance Counsel at A.G. Edwards & Sons, Inc., where he was responsible for legal, regulatory, and compliance issues relating to e-commerce, technology, operations, and anti-money laundering. He formerly served as an enforcement attorney with both FINRA and the Chicago Board Options Exchange. He is currently a member of FINRA's e-Brokerage Committee and Nominating Committee for District 4. Mr. Small previously served as Chairman of FINRA's District Committee for District 4 and on the Board of Directors of the National Society of Compliance Professionals. Mr. Small is a graduate of DePaul University School of Law, Chicago, Illinois.

Holly H. Smith (Chapter 34) is a partner at Eversheds Sutherland. She advises broker-dealers, market makers, banks, and insurance companies on the application of the U.S. federal securities laws and the rules

of the self-regulatory organizations, particularly the National Association of Securities Dealers, Inc. She regularly counsels clients on broker-dealer compliance matters and trading rules, including the net capital and transfer agent rules, supervisory structures, and registration issues. Her practice includes all aspects of compliance with the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. Prior to joining the firm, she spent thirteen years at the Securities and Exchange Commission. While at the SEC, she served as counsel to Commissioner Mary L. Schapiro for approximately five years and later was appointed an Associate Director in the SEC's Division of Market Regulation. As Associate Director, she was responsible for oversight of U.S. stock exchange, options, and over-the-counter markets.

Tiffany J. Smith (Chapter 15) is a senior associate in WilmerHale's Washington, D.C. office's Securities Department, and a member of the Broker-Dealer Compliance and Regulation Practice Group. Ms. Smith received her J.D., *cum laude*, from George Washington University Law School, and her B.B.A. from George Washington University.

W. Mark Smith (Chapter 42 and Chapter 42 Summary) is a partner at Eversheds Sutherland. Since 1981, Mark has advised clients on tax, ERISA and other issues related to retirement, executive compensation, insurance, cafeteria and other employee benefit plans. He is engaged on behalf of plan sponsors, insurance companies, investment advisers and managers, broker-dealers, consulting firms and other service providers for a range of consulting, transactional, regulatory and litigation matters. Prior to joining Eversheds Sutherland, Mark clerked for then-Chief Judge Clement Haynsworth of the United States Court of Appeals for the Fourth Circuit. He served as the 1991–1992 Chair of the Employee Benefits Committee of the American Bar Association Tort Trial and Insurance Practice Section and for several years as a delegate to the ABA Joint Committee on Employee Benefits. Mark serves on the board of directors of the D.C. Bar Foundation and has served on the advisory boards of several programs and publications, including the *Georgetown Corporate Counsel Institute*. He has made more than seventy presentations to a variety of audiences and contributed to more than twenty-five articles and books. Mark is recognized in *The Best Lawyers in America, 2005–2007*, in Employee Benefits Law, and is a Fellow of the American College of Employee Benefits Counsel.

Colleen Snow (Chapter 31B) is an associate in Mayer Brown LLP's White Collar Defense & Compliance practice in Washington, D.C.

She focuses her practice on the counseling and defense of corporations and individuals in Foreign Corrupt Practices Act enforcement matters. Ms. Snow is a *cum laude* graduate of Tulane University Law School, where she received her J.D. in 2014.

Lawrence P. Stadulis (Chapter 48) is a partner at Stradley Ronon Stevens & Young, LLP. Mr. Stadulis advises clients in matters pertaining to the registration and regulation of investment advisers and investment companies under federal and state securities laws. He also manages related issues pertaining to investment advisers and investment companies, including matters involving ERISA, broker-dealer regulation and banking laws.

Mr. Stadulis is a frequent lecturer and author on legal matters pertaining to the investment management industry. He prepares a monthly column on recent SEC developments for *The Investment Lawyer*, a legal publication that focuses on the investment management industry.

Before joining Stradley Ronon, Mr. Stadulis was a partner with another prominent law firm. Prior to that, he was special counsel in the Office of Chief Counsel, Division of Investment Management, U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission. As special counsel, Mr. Stadulis was principally responsible for responding to no-action and interpretive requests under the Investment Company Act of 1940 and Investment Advisers Act of 1940.

Mr. Stadulis was recommended as a national leader in “investment funds: registered funds” in the 2011, 2010, 2009 and 2008 editions of *Chambers USA: America’s Leading Lawyers for Business*.

Mr. Stadulis received his B.A., *magna cum laude*, from Boston College, and his J.D. from Boston College Law School.

John H. Sturc (Chapter 31A) is a partner with Gibson, Dunn & Crutcher LLP and is co-chair of the firm’s Securities Enforcement Practice Group. He joined the firm’s Washington, D.C. office in 1990, where he focuses on securities and financial institutions enforcement matters, securities law, internal investigations, and criminal and civil litigation. Prior to joining the firm, Mr. Sturc worked for eight years with the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), six of those years as the Associate Director of the Division of Enforcement, the second-ranking official in that division. He supervised investigations and litigation concerning all aspects of the federal securities laws, with principal emphasis upon insider trading, market manipulation, and financial disclosure violations. Among Mr. Sturc’s best-known matters

were the Commission's cases against Dennis Levine, Ivan Boesky, Martin Siegel, Michael Milken, and Drexel Burnham Lambert, Inc. Mr. Sturc previously served as Deputy Chief Litigation Counsel and as Assistant Chief Trial Attorney. He also was an Assistant U.S. Attorney in Washington, D.C., where he had extensive experience as a trial and appellate attorney with civil and criminal cases, and led grand jury investigations.

Mr. Sturc has authored numerous publications dealing with enforcement of federal securities and banking laws. He was listed in *The Best Lawyers in America*®2012 for Securities Law and named The Securities Law Lawyer of the Year. He was also ranked as one of Washington's Top Lawyers for securities law by *Washingtonian Magazine* in 2009. He received the Presidential Award for Meritorious Executive Service in 1987 and is a frequent participant in continuing legal education programs concerning securities law and compliance, criminal law and banking law.

Mr. Sturc is a member of the American Bar Association Sections of Business Law, Litigation, and Criminal Justice, and a member of the National Advisory Board, the SEC Institute, Inc. He was previously the vice president of the Assistant United States Attorneys Association in the District of Columbia. He is a member of the bar of the District of Columbia, and is admitted to practice before the following courts: U.S. Court of Appeals, District of Columbia; U.S. District Court, District of Columbia; U.S. Court of Appeals for the Fourth Circuit; U.S. District Court for the District of Maryland; District of Columbia Court of Appeals; and District of Columbia Superior Court. Mr. Sturc received his J.D., *cum laude*, from Harvard Law School, and his B.A., *summa cum laude*, from Cornell University.

Seth T. Taube (Chapters 16 and 37B) is a partner and head of Litigation at the New York office of Baker Botts L.L.P. He is a former U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission Enforcement Branch Chief and Special Assistant United States Attorney, and has written and lectured on law and corporate governance issues.

Bonnie Treichel (Chapter 42A) is the Associate General Counsel and Vice President, Product Development, of the Pension Resource Institute (PRI), providing strategic consulting, education, and technology-based solutions for retirement plan service providers and plan sponsors. Ms. Treichel's day-to-day focus is on review of legal matters facing the organization and its clients, as well as on product development and the firm's technological initiatives. Prior to joining PRI,

About the Contributors

Ms. Treichel was an associate with Edgerton and Weaver, where her practice was dedicated to civil litigation for financial services clients (both brokerage firms and individuals) in matters before state and federal courts, FINRA, the SEC, and other regulatory bodies. Today, she also continues to provide legal counsel on ERISA- and investment-related matters through the Retirement Law Group, PC.

Ms. Treichel is active in the Women's Legal Association of Los Angeles and the National Association of Plan Advisor's Government Affairs Committee. She graduated with honors from Truman State University, earning a degree in Political Science; she also earned a J.D. from Pepperdine University School of Law, where she earned a certificate from the Palmer Center for Entrepreneurship & the Law and where she graduated with honors.

Paul B. Uhlenhop (Chapter 25) is a partner in the Chicago office of Lawrence, Kamin, Saunders & Uhlenhop, L.L.C. He is a member of the firm's extensive securities, commodities, and financial service practice, which he formerly headed. Mr. Uhlenhop was an Adjunct Professor of Law at the University of Illinois and IIT Chicago-Kent College of Law. He is the author of numerous articles on financial services law. Mr. Uhlenhop is a graduate of the University of Illinois College of Law (J.D., 1961) and a member of the Illinois and New York bars.

Laurence A. Urgenson (Chapter 31B) is a partner with Mayer Brown LLP and a co-leader of the firm's Global Anti-Corruption & FCPA practice. He is a member of the White Collar Defense & Compliance practice and works out of the Washington, D.C. office. Mr. Urgenson is widely recognized as one of the preeminent FCPA authorities in the United States. He has represented corporate and individual clients in FCPA and anti-corruption matters worldwide for nearly four decades. As noted in *Chambers*, Mr. Urgenson is "known for his experience in high-stakes investigations" (USA 2013) and "offers incredible knowledge in the FCPA area . . . he has great judgment" (USA 2012). Recently, Mr. Urgenson was named *Benchmark* Litigation Star 2014, 2015. He was also recognized nationally as one of eight FCPA Masters at the first annual *Main Justice* Best FCPA Lawyers Client Service Awards in 2013. Additionally, he is a sought-after writer and speaker on white collar matters and is currently the Chairman of the Board of Editors of the *Business Crimes Bulletin*. Mr. Urgenson received his B.B.A. from City College of the City University of New York, and his J.D., *cum laude*, from Brooklyn

Law School, where he was a member of the National Moot Court Team; a recipient of the Robert Morse Prize; and Senior Editor of the *Brooklyn Law Review*.

Frederick Wertheim (Chapter 5) is a partner of Sullivan & Cromwell LLP, New York, with a broad-based securities practice specializing in the regulation of broker-dealers and in investment management matters. He graduated from Harvard University (B.A., 1982) and New York University School of Law (J.D., 1987).

Michael Wise (Chapter 25) is a partner in the Chicago office of Lawrence, Kamin, Saunders & Uhlenhop, L.L.C. His practice involves most sectors of the financial services industry, encompassing both regulatory and litigation matters. Mr. Wise is an Adjunct Professor of Law at IIT Chicago-Kent College of Law in the Financial Services Program. He is a graduate of Columbia College (B.A., 1976) and Washington University School of Law (J.D., 1979).

Patricia M. Zweibel (Chapter 40A) is counsel in the Political Law Group at Skadden, Arps, Slate, Meagher & Flom, where she advises clients on government affairs at the federal, state and local level, including ethics, lobbying, pay-to-play, conflict-of-interest, and campaign finance laws. In addition, she advises on federal tax treatment of lobbying expenses, and federal tax issues of nonprofit entities. She is a graduate of the University of Maryland School of Law, and received an LL.M. in taxation from Georgetown University Law Center. Immediately prior to joining the Political Law Group at Skadden, she was a Senior Counsel in the Internal Revenue Service Office of the Associate Chief Counsel, Income Tax & Accounting.

Zachary J. Zweihorn (Chapter 2) is counsel in Davis Polk & Wardwell LLP's Financial Institutions Group and the Trading and Markets practice. He advises major international banks, broker-dealers, exchanges and other financial institutions on a wide range of securities regulatory, compliance and transactional matters. Since joining the firm in 2007, he has completed a rotation in the Investment Management Group and the Capital Markets Group. Mr. Zweihorn earned his B.A., *Phi Beta Kappa* and *summa cum laude*, from Queens College, and his J.D., *magna cum laude*, from Cornell Law School, where he was elected to the *Order of the Coif*. Mr. Zweihorn served as the Editor of the *Cornell Law Review*.

Table of Chapters

VOLUME 1

PART I: Introduction, Broker-Dealer Status and Registration

- Chapter 1** Introduction
- Chapter 2** What Is a Broker-Dealer?
- Chapter 3** Brokers, Dealers and “Finders”
- Chapter 4** Bank Exemptions from Broker-Dealer Regulation
- Chapter 5** Broker-Dealer and Associated Person Registration
- Chapter 5A** State Regulation of Broker-Dealers and Agents

PART II: Supervisory Requirements

- Chapter 6** Duty to Supervise
- Chapter 7** Establishment and Maintenance of a Supervisory Structure
- Chapter 8** Branch Office Supervision
- Chapter 9** Supervision of Registered Representatives’ Outside Business Activities

PART III: The Customer Relationship

- Chapter 10** Broker-Dealer Standard of Care
- Chapter 11** Customer Transactions: Suitability, Unauthorized Trading, and Churning

Chapter 12 Advertising and Communications

Chapter 13 Customer Accounts

PART IV: Compensation Practices

Chapter 14 Compensation

Chapter 15 Mark-Ups

PART V: Regulation of Information

Chapter 16 Insider Trading

Chapter 17 Research Analysts

VOLUME 2

PART VI: Trading Practices

Chapter 18 Electronic Trading

Chapter 18A Short Selling

Chapter 19 Best Execution and Customer Order Handling

**Chapter 20 Soft Dollars and Other Means of Obtaining
Business**

Chapter 21 Trading Desk Activities

**Chapter 21A Regulation SCI and Trends in IT and
Cybersecurity Regulation, Compliance, and
Enforcement**

PART VII: Financial Responsibility

**Chapter 22 Financial Obligations—Net Capital, Customer
Protection, and Financial Reporting**

Chapter 23 Reserved

PART VIII: Clearing Activities

Chapter 24 Clearing Broker Liability and Responsibilities

Chapter 25 Clearing Arrangements for Introducing
Broker-Dealers

PART IX: Other Requirements

Chapter 26 Anti-Money Laundering Regulations Applicable
to Broker-Dealers

Chapter 27 Privacy of Client Financial Information

Chapter 28 Practical Implications Regarding the
Safeguarding of Customer Information

Chapter 29 Reserved

Chapter 30 Business Continuity Planning

Chapter 31 Outsourcing by Financial Services Firms

Chapter 31A SEC and CFTC Whistleblower Rules and
Anti-Retaliation Protections

Chapter 31B Enforcement of the Foreign Corrupt Practices
Act and Other Anti-Bribery Laws

Chapter 31C Financial Services Cybersecurity

PART X: Compliance, Examinations, and Enforcement

Chapter 32 Broker-Dealer Compliance Programs

Chapter 32A Broker-Dealer Chief Compliance
Officer Liability

Chapter 33 Record-Keeping

Chapter 34 SEC and FINRA Inspections

Chapter 35 SEC and FINRA Enforcement

Chapter 36 How to Handle SEC/SRO Investigations

**Chapter 37 State Broker-Dealer Record-Keeping,
Examinations and Enforcement**

**Chapter 37A Collateral Consequences for Broker-Dealers
and Associated Persons**

PART XI: Regulatory Reporting Requirements

Chapter 37B Regulatory Reporting Requirements

**Chapter 37C SEC Reporting Requirements Under Section 13
of the Exchange Act**

**Chapter 37D Broker-Dealer Treasury and Related Reporting
Requirements**

VOLUME 3

PART XII: The Municipal Marketplace

Chapter 37E Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board

**Chapter 38 Designing a Political Law Compliance Program
for Broker-Dealers and Advisers**

Chapter 39 Broker-Dealer Regulation of Municipal Activity

Chapter 40 Municipal Advisor Regulation

Chapter 40A Pay-to-Play Rules

PART XIII: Retirement Marketplace

Chapter 41 Reserved

Chapter 42 ERISA Compliance Issues for Broker-Dealers

**Chapter 42A ERISA Compliance: Practical Considerations &
Best Practices for Broker-Dealers**

PART XIV: Broker-Dealer Cross-Border Activities

- Chapter 42B Offering Cross-Border Advisory and Broker-Dealer Services to Non-U.S. Clients**
- Chapter 42C Broker-Dealer Regulation in the United Kingdom: An Overview**
- Chapter 42D Offering Cross-Border Investment Products and Advisory Services to Clients in Latin America**
- Chapter 42E Canada: Securities Regulatory Requirements Applicable to Non-Resident Broker-Dealers, Investment Advisers, and Investment Fund Managers**

PART XV: Special Product Sales

- Chapter 42F Structuring and Selling Structured Products**
- Chapter 42G Regulation of Mutual Fund Sales Practices**
- Chapter 42H Private Placement Sales**

VOLUME 4

PART XVI: Special Topics

- Chapter 43 Arbitration of a Securities Customer Dispute Before FINRA—A Primer on the Practice**
- Chapter 44 Capital Markets and Corporate Finance Activities**
- Chapter 45 Margin and Extensions of Credit: An Overview**
- Chapter 46 U.S. Securities Activities of Foreign Broker-Dealers**
- Chapter 47 The Volcker Rule**
- Chapter 48 Broker-Dealer Use of Social Media and Related Regulations**
- Chapter 49 Investment Banking Compliance**

Table of Contents

VOLUME 1

About the Editor	ix
About the Contributors	xi
Table of Chapters	lxi
Preface	cxcv

PART I: Introduction, Broker-Dealer Status and Registration

Chapter 1 Introduction

Clifford E. Kirsch

§ 1:1	Overview	1-1
§ 1:2	The Pattern of Broker-Dealer Regulation	1-2
§ 1:3	Structure of This Book	1-3

Chapter 2 What Is a Broker-Dealer?

*Robert L.D. Colby, Lanny A. Schwartz &
Zachary J. Zweihorn*

§ 2:1	Exchange Act Registration Requirement	2-4
§ 2:1.1	Section 15	2-4
§ 2:1.2	Consequences of Registration	2-6
§ 2:1.3	Application of Certain Rules to Broker-Dealers Even If Not Registered	2-9
§ 2:1.4	State Registration Requirements	2-10
§ 2:1.5	Consequences of Illegally Doing Business As an Unregistered Broker-Dealer	2-11
§ 2:2	What Is a Broker?	2-12
§ 2:2.1	Generally	2-12
§ 2:2.2	Effecting Transactions	2-13

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

§ 2:2.3	Clerical and Ministerial Activities	2-15
§ 2:2.4	“In the Business”	2-15
§ 2:2.5	“For the Account of Others”	2-17
§ 2:2.6	Role of Compensation in Analysis	2-18
§ 2:2.7	Specific Contexts	2-22
[A]	Finders	2-22
[B]	Private Placement Agents	2-23
[C]	M&A Brokers.....	2-26
[C][1]	Private Company M&A Broker No-Action Letter	2-29
[C][2]	Foreign M&A Brokers.....	2-31
[D]	Networking Arrangements.....	2-32
[D][1]	Banks	2-32
[D][2]	Insurance	2-34
[E]	Issuers and Their Associated Persons	2-35
[E][1]	Issuers.....	2-35
[E][2]	Associated Persons of Issuers.....	2-36
[E][3]	Issuers and Associated Persons in Demutualizations, Exchange Offers, Conversions, Proxy Solicitations	2-39
[F]	Bulletin Boards.....	2-41
[G]	ATs and Securities Exchanges.....	2-43
[H]	Payroll Processing Services.....	2-44
[I]	Personal Service Companies	2-46
[J]	Other Service Providers to the Securities Industry, Broker-Dealers or Issuers	2-47
[J][1]	Communications Services	2-47
[J][2]	Confirmation and Other Processors	2-48
[J][3]	Transfer Agents and Stock Plan Services	2-50
[J][4]	Research Services	2-52
[J][5]	Accountants.....	2-54
[K]	Investment Advisers	2-55
§ 2:3	What Is a Dealer?	2-56
§ 2:3.1	Section 3(a)(5)(A)	2-56
[A]	Generally	2-56
[B]	Buying and Selling Securities for Own Account.....	2-57
[C]	Engaged in the Business	2-58
§ 2:3.2	“Traders” versus “Dealers”—Section 3(a)(5)(B)	2-59
[A]	Generally	2-59
[B]	Funds As Traders	2-64
[C]	Issuers.....	2-65
[D]	Dealers in OTC Derivatives	2-66
§ 2:4	What Is a Security?.....	2-70
§ 2:4.1	Statutory Definition.....	2-70
§ 2:4.2	Case Law on “Investment Contracts”	2-71

Table of Contents

[A]	Generally	2-71
[B]	Investment of Money.....	2-71
[C]	Common Enterprise	2-72
[D]	Expectation of Profits.....	2-73
[E]	Solely from the Efforts of the Promoter or a Third Party	2-74
§ 2:4.3	Case Law on “Notes”	2-75
§ 2:4.4	OTC Derivatives.....	2-80
[A]	Generally	2-80
[B]	Case Law on Derivatives Prior to the Adoption of the Commodity Futures Modernization Act	2-80
[C]	CFMA—Section 3A, 15(i).....	2-81
[D]	The Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act	2-82
[D][1]	New and Amended Definitions	2-84
[D][1][a]	“Swap,” “SBS” and “Security”	2-84
[D][1][b]	“SBS Dealer,” “SBS MSP” and “SBS SEF”	2-87
[D][1][c]	Broker-Dealer Registration Issues.....	2-90
[D][2]	The Volcker Rule and Swaps Pushout Rule	2-92
§ 2:4.5	Security Futures	2-93
§ 2:5	Exempted Securities.....	2-94
§ 2:5.1	Generally.....	2-94
§ 2:5.2	Government Securities	2-94
[A]	Definition	2-94
[B]	Regulation of Government Securities Brokers and Dealers	2-95
§ 2:5.3	Municipal Securities	2-95
[A]	Definition	2-95
[B]	Regulation of Municipal Securities Dealers	2-96
§ 2:5.4	Other Exempted Securities.....	2-96
§ 2:6	Intrastate Broker-Dealers	2-96
§ 2:7	Other Exemptions from Registration.....	2-99
§ 2:7.1	Commercial Paper Dealers.....	2-99
§ 2:7.2	Foreign Broker-Dealers Operating Under Rule 15a-6.....	2-100
[A]	Background	2-100
[A][1]	Pre-Rule 15a-6 Precedents	2-100
[A][2]	Jurisdictional Language in Section 15 and Section 30.....	2-102
[B]	Rule 15a-6.....	2-105
[B][1]	Generally	2-105
[B][2]	Unsolicited Transactions	2-106
[B][3]	Research.....	2-107
[B][4]	Rule 15a-6(a)(3) Arrangements	2-108
[B][5]	Rule 15a-6(a)(4)	2-111

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

[C]	Other Cross-Border Issues	2-113
[D]	Proposal to Amend Rule 15a-6	2-113
§ 2:7.3	Mutual Recognition of Foreign Broker-Dealers ...	2-113
§ 2:7.4	Banks	2-114
[A]	Pre-GLBA Background	2-114
[B]	Bank Brokerage Activities	2-115
[B][1]	Section 3(a)(4)(B).....	2-115
[B][2]	Regulation R	2-116
[B][3]	Networking Arrangements.....	2-116
[B][4]	Trust and Fiduciary Activities.....	2-117
[B][5]	Sweep Accounts and Money Market Funds.....	2-118
[B][6]	Safekeeping and Custody	2-118
[C]	Bank Dealer Activities	2-119
[C][1]	Section 3(a)(5)(C)	2-119
[C][2]	Bank Riskless Principal Activities— Rule 3a5-1	2-120
[C][3]	Bank Regulation S Transactions— Rule 3a5-2	2-121
[C][4]	Bank Securities Lending—Rule 3a5-3	2-122
§ 2:7.5	Charitable Exemption—Section 3(e)	2-122
§ 2:7.6	Funding Portals	2-123
§ 2:7.7	Associated Persons of Registered Broker-Dealers ...	2-125
[A]	Section 15(a)(1)	2-125
[B]	Retired Brokers—SEC Guidance and FINRA Rules Concerning Trailing Commissions	2-125
§ 2:7.8	Miscellaneous Exemptions—Rule 15a-2 and 15a-5	2-128
§ 2:7.9	General Exemptive Authority	2-128
§ 2:8	Doing Business As an Unregistered Broker-Dealer.....	2-129
§ 2:8.1	SEC and State Enforcement.....	2-129
§ 2:8.2	Private Actions—Exchange Act § 29(b).....	2-131
§ 2:8.3	Concerns for Controlling Persons.....	2-133
§ 2:8.4	Concerns for Registered Broker-Dealers.....	2-134
[A]	Compensation Sharing	2-134
[B]	Participating in Syndicates with Unregistered Persons.....	2-135
[C]	Aiding and Abetting.....	2-136
§ 2:8.5	Concerns for Issuers	2-136
[A]	Liability for Aiding and Abetting or Causing.....	2-136
[B]	State Liability for Engaging Unlicensed Agents	2-136
[C]	Section 29	2-137

Chapter 3 Brokers, Dealers and “Finders”

Laura S. Pruitt

§ 3:1	Overview	3-2
§ 3:2	The Statutory Scheme	3-4
§ 3:2.1	Regulatory Requirements	3-5
§ 3:2.2	What Is a Broker?	3-8
[A]	“Effecting Transactions in Securities”	3-9
[A][1]	Structuring Securities Transactions	3-11
[A][2]	Helping Identify Potential Purchasers.....	3-11
[A][3]	Credit-Related Activities	3-12
[A][4]	Facilitating Negotiation of Transactions	3-13
[A][5]	Soliciting Securities Transactions	3-14
[A][6]	Facilitating the Execution of a Transaction, or Participating in Order-Taking and Order-Routing.....	3-16
[A][7]	Handling Customer Funds and Securities	3-19
[A][8]	Post-Execution Securities Activities	3-19
[B]	“Engaged in the Business”	3-19
[B][1]	Receiving Transaction-Related Compensation....	3-20
[B][2]	Holding Oneself Out As a Broker.....	3-23
[B][3]	Participating in the Securities Business	3-24
§ 3:2.3	What Is a Dealer?	3-25
§ 3:2.4	What Is a Finder?	3-29
§ 3:3	“Finders” No-Action Letters	3-32
§ 3:4	Finders for Issuers	3-33
§ 3:4.1	Rule 3a4-1: Associated Persons of an Issuer	3-33
§ 3:4.2	Non-Associated Persons of an Issuer	3-37
§ 3:4.3	Business Brokers and Investor Finders	3-38
§ 3:4.4	Crowdfunding Intermediaries	3-42
§ 3:4.5	Financial Advisers to Issuers.....	3-46
§ 3:4.6	Associated Persons of Broker-Dealers	3-51
§ 3:4.7	Listing, Matching and Trading Systems.....	3-53
[A]	Listing Systems and Bulletin Boards.....	3-53
[B]	Matching Systems.....	3-57
[C]	Trading Systems.....	3-62
§ 3:5	Finders for Registered Broker-Dealers	3-63
§ 3:5.1	Networking Arrangements.....	3-64
[A]	Depository Institutions.....	3-65
[B]	Insurance Agents	3-71
[C]	Real Estate Agents	3-74
§ 3:5.2	Affinity Groups	3-77
§ 3:5.3	Other Professional Referrals.....	3-78
§ 3:5.4	Investment Advisers Engaged in Broker-Dealer Activity.....	3-81

§ 3:5.5 Internet Portals 3-83
 § 3:5.6 Financial Service Centers/Communication
 Links 3-88
 § 3:5.7 The Intrastate Exemption and Registration
 Issues Under State Law 3-91

Chapter 4 Bank Exemptions from Broker-Dealer Regulation

David F. Freeman, Jr.

§ 4:1 Background 4-2
 § 4:2 “Exempted Securities” and Instruments That
 Are Not “Securities” 4-4
 § 4:3 What Is a “Bank”? 4-5
 § 4:4 Bank Exemptions from Securities “Dealer” Status 4-6
 § 4:4.1 What Is a “Dealer”? 4-7
 § 4:4.2 1934 Act Section 3(a)(5) and SEC GLB Act
 Dealer Rules 4-8
 [A] Permissible Securities Transactions 4-8
 [B] Investment, Trustee, and Fiduciary Transactions 4-9
 [C] Asset-Backed Transactions 4-9
 [D] Identified Banking Products 4-10
 [E] Securities Lending “Dealer” and “Broker”
 Exemption 4-11
 [F] Riskless Principal 500 Transaction Exemption 4-12
 [G] Regulation S and Offshore Sales Exemption 4-12
 § 4:5 Bank Exemptions from Securities “Broker” Status 4-13
 § 4:5.1 What Is a “Broker”? 4-13
 § 4:5.2 1934 Act Section 3(a)(4) and Regulation R 4-13
 [A] Third-Party Brokerage “Networking”
 Arrangements 4-14
 [B] Trust and Fiduciary Activities 4-17
 [C] Permissible Securities Transactions 4-18
 [D] Certain Stock Purchase Plans 4-18
 [E] Sweep Accounts 4-19
 [F] Affiliate Transactions 4-20
 [G] Private Securities Offerings 4-20
 [H] Safekeeping and Custody Activities 4-20
 [I] Identified Banking Products 4-22
 [J] Municipal Securities 4-23
 [K] *De Minimis* Exception 4-23
 [L] Regulation S and Offshore Sales Exemption 4-23
 § 4:6 FINRA Dual Bank Employees Supervision
 Rule Exemption 4-24
 § 4:7 Volcker Rule and Title VII of the Dodd-Frank Act 4-25

**Chapter 5 Broker-Dealer and Associated Person
Registration**

Frederick Wertheim

§ 5:1 Overview 5-2

§ 5:2 SEC Registration Process 5-4

 § 5:2.1 Requirements in the Statute and Rules 5-4

 [A] Application for Registration 5-4

 [B] Grant or Denial of Registration 5-5

 [C] Registration of Security Futures Broker-Dealers..... 5-6

 [D] Six-Month Inspection 5-7

 § 5:2.2 Form BD 5-7

 [A] Items 1–13..... 5-8

 [B] Schedules A, B, and C 5-9

 [C] Schedule D..... 5-9

 [D] Schedule E 5-9

 § 5:2.3 Form BR—Registration of Branch Offices..... 5-9

 § 5:2.4 SIPC..... 5-11

§ 5:3 Registration of Personnel 5-12

 § 5:3.1 Generally..... 5-12

 [A] Disqualification..... 5-13

 [B] Restriction on Outside Activities 5-14

 § 5:3.2 Categories of Registration 5-14

 § 5:3.3 Qualification Examinations 5-16

 § 5:3.4 Forms U4 and U5..... 5-18

 § 5:3.5 Warehousing Prohibition..... 5-20

§ 5:4 FINRA Membership Process..... 5-21

 § 5:4.1 Name of Firm 5-24

 § 5:4.2 Membership Application..... 5-24

 [A] Fidelity Bonding Requirements 5-30

 § 5:4.3 Processing of Application..... 5-30

 § 5:4.4 Interview 5-31

 § 5:4.5 Decision and Appeals 5-32

§ 5:5 NYSE and Other National Securities Exchanges 5-32

 § 5:5.1 Demutualization 5-34

 § 5:5.2 Affiliated Persons and Entities 5-35

 [A] Control 5-35

 [B] Allied Members; Principal Executives..... 5-35

 [C] Approved Persons..... 5-36

 § 5:5.3 Limitations on Withdrawals of Capital 5-37

 § 5:5.4 Disabling Provision..... 5-37

§ 5:6 State Registration Requirements..... 5-37

Chapter 5A State Regulation of Broker-Dealers and Agents

G. Philip Rutledge

§ 5A:1	Introduction	5A-4
§ 5A:2	Uniform Securities Acts	5A-5
§ 5A:2.1	Uniform Sales of Securities Act of 1930 ("USA 1930")	5A-5
§ 5A:2.2	Uniform Securities Act of 1956 ("USA 1956")	5A-6
§ 5A:2.3	Uniform Securities Act of 1985 ("USA 1985")	5A-6
§ 5A:2.4	Uniform Securities Act of 2002 ("USA 2002")	5A-6
§ 5A:2.5	Persistence of Non-Uniformity	5A-7
§ 5A:3	Definitions	5A-8
§ 5A:3.1	Definition of Broker-Dealer	5A-8
§ 5A:3.2	Definition of Agent.....	5A-8
§ 5A:3.3	Exclusions from the Definitions.....	5A-9
[A]	Exclusions from the Definition of Broker-Dealer...	5A-9
[A][1]	USA 1956	5A-9
[A][2]	USA 2002.....	5A-10
[B]	Exclusions from the Definition of Agent.....	5A-11
[B][1]	USA 1956	5A-11
[B][2]	USA 2002.....	5A-11
§ 5A:3.4	Finders, Auctioneers, and M&A Brokers	5A-11
[A]	Finders	5A-11
[B]	Auctioneers	5A-13
[C]	M&A Brokers.....	5A-13
§ 5A:4	Regulatory Jurisdiction, FINRA, and NASAA	5A-15
§ 5A:4.1	Concurrent Federal and State Jurisdiction.....	5A-15
§ 5A:4.2	Foreign Broker-Dealers	5A-16
§ 5A:4.3	FINRA	5A-17
§ 5A:4.4	NASAA	5A-17
§ 5A:4.5	Individual State Securities Administrators	5A-18
§ 5A:4.6	Funding Portals under the JOBS Act	5A-18
[A]	Federal Preemption of State Jurisdiction Over Out-of-State Registered Funding Portals.....	5A-19
[B]	State Regulation of In-State Registered Funding Portals.....	5A-20
[C]	Preservation of State Jurisdiction Over Unlawful Conduct of Funding Portals.....	5A-20
§ 5A:5	State Jurisdiction Over the Itinerant/Internet Client.....	5A-21
§ 5A:5.1	Federal Preemption and the Itinerant Client....	5A-22
§ 5A:5.2	USA 2002 and the Itinerant Client.....	5A-22
[A]	<i>De Minimis</i>	5A-22
[B]	Transactions with Pre-Existing Customers.....	5A-23
[C]	Transactions with Recently Moved Customers...	5A-23

Table of Contents

§ 5A:5.3	NASAA Statement of Policy on Communications by Financial Intermediaries Over the Internet.....	5A-24
§ 5A:6	Registration and Exemption.....	5A-25
§ 5A:6.1	Registration Requirements.....	5A-25
[A]	Broker-Dealers	5A-25
[B]	Agents.....	5A-25
[C]	Successor Registration	5A-26
§ 5A:6.2	Exemptions.....	5A-26
[A]	Broker-Dealers	5A-26
[B]	Agents.....	5A-27
§ 5A:6.3	Dual Registration of Agents	5A-28
§ 5A:6.4	Limitation on Association	5A-28
§ 5A:7	Registration Process	5A-29
§ 5A:7.1	Central Registration Depository	5A-29
§ 5A:7.2	Uniform Forms.....	5A-30
§ 5A:7.3	Consent to Service of Process.....	5A-31
§ 5A:7.4	Examination Requirements	5A-32
§ 5A:7.5	Time Period for Action on an Application	5A-33
§ 5A:7.6	Federal Preemption of Capital, Margin, Books and Records, and Bonding	5A-33
§ 5A:7.7	FINRA Membership	5A-34
§ 5A:7.8	Renewal and Transfer of Registrations	5A-34
[A]	Renewal	5A-34
[B]	Transfer.....	5A-34
§ 5A:7.9	Termination and Withdrawal	5A-36
[A]	Termination.....	5A-36
[B]	Withdrawal.....	5A-36
[B][1]	Trail Commissions to Retired Agents.....	5A-37
[B][2]	Form U-5 and Defamation Actions.....	5A-38
§ 5A:8	Post Registration Compliance	5A-39
§ 5A:8.1	Books, Records, and Net Capital.....	5A-39
§ 5A:8.2	Compliance Audits and Inspections.....	5A-39
[A]	Regulatory Audits and Inspections	5A-39
[A][1]	Routine Audits and Inspections.....	5A-40
[A][2]	“For Cause” Inspections	5A-40
[B]	Internal Inspections by Broker-Dealer Compliance Departments.....	5A-41
§ 5A:8.3	Continuing Education	5A-41
§ 5A:8.4	Obligation to Amend Forms BD and U-4	5A-42
§ 5A:9	Denial, Suspension, Revocation or Conditioning	5A-42
§ 5A:9.1	Meeting Any Statutory Criteria Should Not Be Characterized As a Violation.....	5A-42

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

§ 5A:9.2	Statutory Criteria for Administrative Action...	5A-43
[A]	USA 1956.....	5A-43
[A][1]	Criteria	5A-43
[A][2]	Constraints on Administrative Action	5A-45
[B]	USA 2002.....	5A-46
[B][1]	Applicants.....	5A-46
[B][2]	Registrants	5A-46
[B][3]	Criteria	5A-46
[B][4]	Limitation on Investigation or Proceeding	5A-49
[B][5]	Conditioning or Limiting a License.....	5A-49
[C]	FINRA Actions	5A-50
[D]	Additional Criteria.....	5A-51
[E]	Discretionary Versus Mandatory Action.....	5A-51
§ 5A:9.3	Summary Licensing Orders	5A-52
§ 5A:9.4	Control Person Discipline Imposed by the Administrator	5A-53
§ 5A:10	Administrative Enforcement	5A-54
§ 5A:10.1	Investigations	5A-54
[A]	Investigative Authority and Powers	5A-54
[B]	Confidentiality of Investigative Files	5A-54
[C]	Sharing of Investigative Information	5A-55
[D]	State “Right to Know” Laws.....	5A-55
[E]	Discovery Requests for Investigative Files in Civil Litigation.....	5A-56
§ 5A:10.2	Administrative Subpoena Authority	5A-56
[A]	Scope, Privilege, and Enforcement.....	5A-56
[B]	Compulsion and Immunity.....	5A-57
[C]	Reciprocal Subpoena Authority.....	5A-58
§ 5A:10.3	Civil Injunctions	5A-58
§ 5A:10.4	Administrative Orders	5A-60
[A]	Cease and Desist Orders	5A-60
[A][1]	Basis for Cease and Desist Order	5A-60
[A][2]	Contents of a Cease and Desist Order	5A-61
[A][3]	Summary Process	5A-61
[A][4]	Hearings and Final Orders.....	5A-62
[A][5]	Judicial Enforcement.....	5A-62
[B]	Orders to Show Cause.....	5A-62
[C]	Notices and Procedures	5A-63
[D]	Judicial Review.....	5A-63
[D][1]	USA 1956.....	5A-63
[D][2]	USA 2002.....	5A-64
[D][3]	Judicial Review and Request for Rehearings	5A-64

Table of Contents

[E]	Judicial Stay	5A-64
[F]	Administrative Enforcement of General Anti-Fraud Provision	5A-64
§ 5A:10.5	Hearings to Be Public	5A-66
§ 5A:10.6	Burden of Going Forward, Burden of Proof	5A-67
§ 5A:10.7	Statute of Limitations on Administrative Actions	5A-67
§ 5A:10.8	State Actions Giving Rise to Federal Statutory Disqualification.....	5A-67
§ 5A:11	Civil Liability	5A-69
§ 5A:11.1	USA 1956.....	5A-70
[A]	Registration Liability.....	5A-70
[B]	Anti-Fraud Liability	5A-70
[C]	Joint and Several Liability.....	5A-70
[D]	Rescission Offers.....	5A-71
[E]	Damages	5A-71
[F]	Statute of Limitations, Survival, Non-Exclusive Remedy	5A-71
§ 5A:11.2	USA 2002.....	5A-72
[A]	Securities Litigation Uniform Standards Act of 1998.....	5A-72
[B]	Registration Liability.....	5A-72
[C]	Anti-Fraud Liability of Seller to Purchaser and Damages	5A-72
[D]	Anti-Fraud Liability of Purchaser to Seller and Damages	5A-73
[E]	Joint and Several Liability.....	5A-74
[F]	Statute of Limitations, Survival, Non-Exclusive Remedy	5A-74
[G]	Rescission Offers.....	5A-75
§ 5A:11.3	Who Is a Seller?.....	5A-76
§ 5A:11.4	No Civil Liability for Meeting Statutory Criteria for Denial, Suspension, or Revocation of License.....	5A-77
§ 5A:11.5	Arbitration Clauses in Client Brokerage Agreements	5A-78
§ 5A:11.6	State Common Law Claims	5A-78
§ 5A:12	Criminal Liability.....	5A-79
§ 5A:12.1	USA 1956.....	5A-79
§ 5A:12.2	USA 2002.....	5A-79
§ 5A:12.3	Affirmative Defenses	5A-80
§ 5A:12.4	Willfulness.....	5A-80

PART II: Supervisory Requirements

Chapter 6 Duty to Supervise

David F. Freeman, Jr.

§ 6:1	What Is Supervision?	6-3
§ 6:2	Why Supervise?.....	6-4
§ 6:2.1	Rules Require You to Supervise.....	6-4
§ 6:2.2	Reduce Chance of Violation or Loss Occurring	6-5
§ 6:2.3	Reduce Entity Liability If Violation Occurs	6-5
§ 6:2.4	Investor Protection.....	6-6
§ 6:3	Sources of Affirmative Duty to Supervise.....	6-6
§ 6:3.1	Securities Exchange Act of 1934.....	6-6
[A]	Exchange Act Sections 15(b)(4)(E) and 15(b)(6)	6-6
[B]	Insider Trading (Sections 15(f), 21A(b) of Exchange Act; 1990 SEC Report).....	6-7
[C]	Controlling Person Liability/Affirmative Defense	6-7
[D]	SEC Requirements Regarding Standards for Supervision	6-8
§ 6:3.2	FINRA Rules	6-9
[A]	FINRA Rules 3110, 3120, 3130, 3310	6-9
[B]	Former FINRA/NYSE Rules (342, 401, 405, 410)....	6-16
[C]	FINRA Membership Process.....	6-17
[D]	Examination Checks.....	6-18
§ 6:3.3	Criminal Law.....	6-18
[A]	Prosecutorial Discretion.....	6-18
[B]	Enforcement Matrix/Sentencing Guidelines	6-19
§ 6:3.4	Other Regulatory Programs—AML, Privacy, Telemarketing	6-20
§ 6:4	Evolution of Supervisory Duty.....	6-21
§ 6:4.1	Respondeat Superior	6-21
§ 6:4.2	Negligence, Recklessness, and Scierter.....	6-21
§ 6:4.3	<i>In re Reynolds & Co.</i> Enforcement Action	6-22
§ 6:4.4	1963 SEC Duty to Supervise Report to Congress	6-22
§ 6:4.5	1964 Amendments to Exchange Act Adding Section 15(b)(4)(E).....	6-22
§ 6:4.6	ITSFEA of 1988	6-23
§ 6:4.7	Change in SRO and SEC Approach in Mid 1990s	6-24
§ 6:4.8	<i>Gruttadauria</i> and 2004 Amendments to NASD, NYSE Supervisory Rules.....	6-25
§ 6:5	Enforcement/Failure to Supervise	6-25
§ 6:5.1	As a Form of Derivative Liability/Affirmative Defense	6-25

Table of Contents

§ 6:5.2	As an Additional Offense.....	6-26
§ 6:5.3	As a Free-Standing Offense.....	6-26
§ 6:6	Functional Roles in Supervision and Internal Controls.....	6-26
§ 6:6.1	Line Supervision	6-27
§ 6:6.2	Compliance.....	6-27
§ 6:6.3	Risk Management.....	6-28
§ 6:6.4	Financial and Managerial Accounting and Information Systems.....	6-28
§ 6:6.5	Internal Audit	6-28
§ 6:7	Key Elements of Supervisory Program	6-29
§ 6:7.1	Involvement of Board and Senior Management.....	6-29
§ 6:7.2	Inventory What Needs to Be Supervised.....	6-29
§ 6:7.3	Written Supervisory Policies and Procedures	6-30
§ 6:7.4	Assignment of Responsibility to Specific People	6-30
§ 6:7.5	Qualification and Training of Supervisors and Other Personnel.....	6-30
§ 6:7.6	Centralized Versus Distributed Supervision.....	6-31
§ 6:7.7	Span of Supervision	6-31
§ 6:7.8	Automation of Supervisory Functions	6-31
§ 6:7.9	Daily Routines	6-31
§ 6:7.10	Monthly, Quarterly, and Annual Routines.....	6-32
§ 6:7.11	Process for Tracking and Following Up on Complaints and “Red Flags”	6-32
§ 6:7.12	Supervision of Change	6-32
[A]	New Products, Product Changes, and Complex Products.....	6-32
[B]	New Offices and Personnel.....	6-39
[C]	New Lines of Business.....	6-39
[D]	Changes to Regulatory Requirements, Periodic Review and Update	6-39
§ 6:7.13	Supervision of Client Accounts	6-39
§ 6:7.14	Supervision of Personnel, Correspondence and Email; Heightened Supervisory Obligations for Personnel and Firms with Past Enforcement Problems.....	6-40
§ 6:7.15	Supervision of Offices/OSJs.....	6-41
§ 6:7.16	Supervision of Lines of Business and Products.....	6-45
§ 6:7.17	Supervision of Adherence to Particular Rules	6-45
§ 6:7.18	Supervision of Reporting, Books and Records.....	6-45
§ 6:7.19	Compensation Systems.....	6-46
§ 6:7.20	Role of Compliance Personnel	6-46
§ 6:7.21	Diligence Regarding Third Parties	6-47
§ 6:7.22	Verifying and Testing Supervisory Controls	6-49
§ 6:7.23	Risk Management Policies.....	6-49

§ 6:7.24	Supervision of Cybersecurity.....	6-50
§ 6:7.25	Role of Firm Governance and Culture in Supervision	6-54
§ 6:7.26	Glossary of Key Terms	6-55

**Chapter 7 Establishment and Maintenance of a
Supervisory Structure**

Clifford E. Kirsch & Ben Marzouk

§ 7:1	Introduction.....	7-2
§ 7:2	FINRA Rule 3110	7-3
§ 7:2.1	Designation of Principals.....	7-3
§ 7:2.2	Designation of Offices	7-4
	[A] Offices of Supervisory Jurisdiction.....	7-4
	[B] Branch Offices and Non-Branch Locations.....	7-6
	[B][1] Prior to 2006	7-6
	[B][2] 2006—2014.....	7-6
	[B][3] 2014.....	7-8
§ 7:2.3	Designation of Offices Under State Securities Laws.....	7-8
§ 7:2.4	Assignment of Registered Persons to Registered Principals	7-8
§ 7:2.5	Reflection of a Firm’s Supervisory Structure in Its Written Procedures	7-8
§ 7:2.6	Internal Inspections	7-10
§ 7:3	Special Supervisory Structure Issues Concerning the Separation Between Research and Investment Banking Personnel	7-10
§ 7:4	Special Supervisory Structure Issues Concerning Geographically Dispersed and Remote Sales Offices.....	7-11

Chapter 8 Branch Office Supervision

Cheryl L. Haas

§ 8:1	Introduction.....	8-2
§ 8:2	Branch Office Defined	8-4
§ 8:2.1	Exemptions from Branch Office Definition/Registration.....	8-5
	[A] Non-Sales Locations/Back Offices	8-5
	[B] Primary Residences	8-6
	[C] Locations Other Than Primary Residences	8-7
	[D] Offices of Convenience	8-7
	[E] Location Used Primarily to Engage in Non-Securities Activities	8-7

Table of Contents

[F]	Floor of a Registered National Securities Exchange	8-8
[G]	Temporary Location Used for Business Continuity Purposes	8-8
§ 8:2.2	FINRA Office of Supervisory Jurisdiction	8-8
§ 8:2.3	Branch Office Registration	8-10
§ 8:3	Home Office Supervision of Branch Offices	8-11
§ 8:3.1	Creating Written Supervisory Procedures.....	8-12
[A]	General Considerations	8-12
§ 8:3.2	Branch Inspections.....	8-13
[A]	Regulatory Requirements	8-13
[B]	Best Practices	8-14
[C]	Areas of Coverage	8-16
[D]	Conflicts of Interest	8-17
§ 8:3.3	Training.....	8-18
[A]	General Considerations	8-18
[B]	Regulatory Requirements	8-18
§ 8:3.4	Supervision of Supervisory Personnel	8-19
[A]	Regulatory Requirements	8-19
[B]	Limited Exceptions	8-20
§ 8:4	On-Site Supervision of Branch Offices	8-20
§ 8:4.1	Supervising Sales Activities and Communications	8-20
[A]	Sales Activities and Internal Investigation Reporting	8-20
[B]	Communications	8-23
[B][1]	Evidence of Review of Correspondence and Internal Communications	8-23
[B][2]	Delegation of Correspondence and Internal Communication Review Functions	8-23
[B][3]	Retention of Correspondence and Internal Communications	8-24
[B][4]	Risk-Based Review of Correspondence and Internal Communications	8-24
§ 8:4.2	Investigating Applicants for FINRA Registration	8-27
§ 8:4.3	Implementing Back Office Controls	8-28
§ 8:4.4	Delegating Responsibility.....	8-28
§ 8:4.5	Handling Customer Complaints	8-28
§ 8:4.6	Maintaining Books and Records	8-29
[A]	Required Records	8-29
[B]	Contact Person Records	8-29
[C]	Record Retention	8-30
§ 8:5	Foreign Offices.....	8-30
§ 8:5.1	General Considerations	8-30
§ 8:5.2	Registration.....	8-31
§ 8:5.3	Supervision	8-31

**Chapter 9 Supervision of Registered Representatives’
Outside Business Activities**

David F. Freeman, Jr.

§ 9:1	What Activities Are Covered?	9-2
§ 9:2	Why Supervise Outside Activities?	9-3
§ 9:3	The Regulatory Framework	9-3
§ 9:3.1	FINRA Rules 3270 and 3280 (Former FINRA/NASD Conduct Rule 3040).....	9-4
[A]	FINRA Rule 3270—Outside Business Activity	9-4
[B]	FINRA Rule 3280—“Selling Away”	9-4
[C]	FINRA Staff Interpretations of FINRA Rules 3270, 3280, and Former FINRA/NASD Conduct Rule 3040	9-6
[C][1]	Coverage of FINRA Rules 3270 and 3280.....	9-6
[C][2]	Interpretation of “Selling Compensation”	9-9
[C][3]	Required Form of Written Notice and Written Approval	9-9
[C][4]	Record-Keeping Requirement	9-9
[C][5]	Application of Net Capital and Customer Protection Requirements to Rule 3280 Transactions	9-11
[D]	History and Purpose of FINRA Rules 3270 and 3280.....	9-12
[E]	Disciplinary Actions Under FINRA Rules 3270 and 3280.....	9-15
[F]	Affirmative Obligation to Conduct Surveillance for Unreported Activities	9-17
[G]	Interaction with Investment Advisers Act Ethics and Compliance Rules	9-18
§ 9:3.2	FINRA Rule 3210 (Formerly Rule 3050).....	9-18
[A]	Exception for Transactions in Investment Company Securities	9-20
[B]	Application of FINRA Rules 3270 and 3280 to Transactions Covered by Rule 3210.....	9-20
§ 9:3.3	Former NYSE Rule 346.....	9-20
§ 9:4	Written Supervisory Procedures	9-21
§ 9:5	Overlapping Jurisdiction and Conflict with Other Regulatory Regimes.....	9-21

PART III: The Customer Relationship

Chapter 10 Broker-Dealer Standard of Care

Clifford E. Kirsch & Ben Marzouk

§ 10:1	Introduction.....	10-2
§ 10:2	Current Legal Framework.....	10-2
§ 10:2.1	Current Framework for Standard of Care.....	10-2
§ 10:2.2	Duty of Fair Dealing (the “Shingle Theory”).....	10-4
§ 10:2.3	Duty to Observe Just and Equitable Principles of Trade	10-5
§ 10:2.4	Situations Where Broker-Dealers Are Bound by Fiduciary Duty	10-7
[A]	Discretionary Accounts.....	10-7
[B]	Certain Relationships of Trust.....	10-8
[C]	Dual Registrants	10-8
[D]	Muni-Advisors	10-9
[E]	ERISA Fiduciaries	10-9
§ 10:3	Chronology—Regulatory Response to Convergence of Broker-Dealer and Advisory Services	10-10
§ 10:4	Treatment of Broker-Dealers Under the Advisers Act	10-13
§ 10:4.1	Generally.....	10-13
§ 10:4.2	RAND Report	10-13
§ 10:5	Harmonizing the Broker-Dealer and Investment Adviser Standard of Care.....	10-14
§ 10:6	Legislative Proposals	10-15
§ 10:6.1	Investor Protection Act of 2009.....	10-15
§ 10:6.2	House Proposal	10-16
§ 10:6.3	Senate Banking Committee Proposal.....	10-17
§ 10:6.4	Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act of 2010	10-17
[A]	The SEC Study	10-19
[B]	SEC’s Request for Cost/Benefit Data	10-23
[B][1]	Assumptions About a Possible Uniform Fiduciary Standard	10-24
[B][2]	Possible Uniform Fiduciary Standard	10-25
[B][3]	Possible Alternatives to a Uniform Standard	10-26
[B][4]	Key Industry Concerns	10-26
[B][5]	Information About Changes Made in Response to 2007 Wrap Fee Account Rule Case.....	10-27
[B][6]	Information About Further Regulatory Harmonization	10-27

§ 10:7	Practical Implications to Consider	10-28
§ 10:8	SEC Activity: 2013–2016.....	10-29
§ 10:9	Other Initiatives	10-30
§ 10:9.1	Department of Labor’s Fiduciary Duty Rule.....	10-30
§ 10:9.2	The GAO’s Financial Planner Study	10-32

Chapter 11 Customer Transactions: Suitability, Unauthorized Trading, and Churning

*Charles R. Mills, Andrew E. Porter &
Ronald A. Holinsky*

§ 11:1	Introduction.....	11-2
§ 11:1.1	The Suitability Doctrine and Its Origins.....	11-3
[A]	FINRA Rule 2111	11-4
[B]	FINRA Rule 2090	11-7
§ 11:1.2	Practical Considerations in Applying the Suitability Doctrine.....	11-8
[A]	Investment Objectives	11-8
[B]	Investment Risk.....	11-9
[C]	Evaluation of Investment Costs.....	11-11
[D]	Investigation of Customer Finances and Investment Objectives	11-13
[E]	Unsolicited Orders.....	11-14
[F]	Broker-Dealer Sales Training and Compensation Policies.....	11-15
§ 11:1.3	Specialized Application of the Suitability Doctrine.....	11-15
[A]	Securities Options and Security Futures.....	11-16
[B]	Institutional Investors	11-18
[C]	Accounts Managed by Third-Party Investment Advisers	11-18
[D]	Variable Annuities and Mutual Funds.....	11-19
[D][1]	Variable Annuities.....	11-20
[D][2]	Variable Life Insurance.....	11-25
[D][3]	Mutual Funds	11-26
[D][4]	Variable Annuity and Mutual Fund Switches.....	11-29
[E]	Online Trading.....	11-30
[F]	Day Trading	11-32
[G]	Low-Priced Securities	11-33
[H]	Hedge Funds	11-33
[I]	Municipal Securities	11-34
[J]	“New Products” and Non-Conventional Investments	11-34

Table of Contents

[J][1]	Non-Traditional ETFs	11-35
[J][2]	Principal-Protected Notes	11-36
[J][3]	Reverse Convertibles	11-36
[K]	Auction Rate Securities	11-37
[L]	Direct Participation Programs	11-38
[M]	Rollovers to Individual Retirement Accounts	11-38
§ 11:1.4	Liability for Unsuitable Recommendations	11-39
[A]	Regulatory Enforcement Actions	11-39
[B]	Private Rights of Action	11-40
§ 11:1.5	Reasonable-Basis Suitability	11-41
§ 11:2	Unauthorized Trading	11-42
§ 11:3	Churning	11-46

Chapter 12 Advertising and Communications

John R. Hewitt

§ 12:1	Introduction	12-3
§ 12:2	Broker-Dealer Communications with the Public	12-4
§ 12:2.1	Approval and Record-Keeping	12-9
§ 12:2.2	Filing Requirements and Review Procedures	12-11
§ 12:2.3	Exclusions from Filing Requirements	12-13
§ 12:2.4	Content Standards	12-14
§ 12:2.5	Guidelines to Ensure That Communications with the Public Are Not Misleading	12-17
§ 12:2.6	NASD IM-2210-2: Communications with the Public About Variable Life Insurance and Variable Annuities	12-18
§ 12:2.7	Use of Rankings in Investment Companies' Communications	12-18
§ 12:2.8	Requirements for Use of Bond Mutual Fund Volatility Ratings	12-19
[A]	Definition	12-19
[B]	Prohibitions on Use	12-19
[C]	Disclosure Requirements	12-20
§ 12:2.9	Requirements for the Use of Investment Analysis Tools	12-21
§ 12:2.10	Guidelines for Communications with the Public Regarding Securities Futures	12-21
[A]	Specific Standards	12-22
[B]	Projections	12-22
[C]	Historical Performance	12-23
[D]	Record-Keeping	12-24
[E]	Guidelines for Communications with the Public Regarding Securities Futures	12-24

§ 12:2.11	Communications with the Public About Collateralized Mortgage Obligations (CMOs)	12-25
[A]	SRO Guidance for Supervision of Electronic Communications	12-26
[A][1]	External Communications—Non-Member Email Platforms	12-27
[A][2]	Internal Communications	12-28
[A][3]	Person(s) Responsible for Review of Electronic Communications	12-28
[A][4]	Methods of Review for Correspondence	12-29
[A][5]	Random Review of Electronic Correspondence	12-29
[A][6]	Combination of Lexicon and Random Review of Electronic Correspondence	12-30
[A][7]	Standards Applicable to All Review Systems	12-30
[A][8]	Frequency of Review of Correspondence.....	12-30
[A][9]	Documentation of Review of Correspondence	12-31
[A][10]	Social Media	12-31
[A][10][a]	Introduction: Understanding Social Media Sites.....	12-31
[A][10][b]	Regulatory Notice 10-06: Social Media Websites	12-31
[A][10][c]	Static and Interactive Features	12-31
[A][10][d]	Third-Party Posts: Adoption and Entanglement	12-32
[A][10][e]	Regulatory Notice 11-39: Social Media Websites and Use of Personal Devices for Business Communications.....	12-33
§ 12:2.12	FINRA Rule 2220: Options Communications with the Public.....	12-35
[A]	Definitions.....	12-36
[B]	FINRA Approval—Advertisements and Educational Material.....	12-36
[C]	Standards Applicable to Communications with the Public	12-37
§ 12:2.13	NASD Rule 2711—Research Analysts and Research Reports.....	12-40
[A]	Restrictions on Relationship with Research Department.....	12-43
[B]	Restrictions on Communications with Subject Company.....	12-44
[C]	Prohibition of Certain Forms of Analyst Compensation	12-45

Table of Contents

[D]	Prohibition of Promises of Favorable Research.....	12-45
[E]	Restrictions on Research Publication.....	12-46
[F]	Personal Trading	12-47
[F][1]	Prohibition of Purchasing or Receiving Pre-IPO Securities	12-47
[F][2]	Blackout Periods	12-47
[G]	Disclosure Requirements	12-48
[G][1]	Third-Party Research Disclosure and Supervision	12-50
[H]	Regulation Analyst Certification.....	12-52
[H][1]	Certifications in Connection with Research Reports.....	12-52
[H][2]	Certifications in Connection with Public Appearances.....	12-53
[I]	Operation and Effectiveness of the Research Analyst Conflict of Interest Rules.....	12-54
[J]	Misleading Communications About Expertise	12-56

Chapter 13 Customer Accounts

Susan Krawczyk

§ 13:1	What Is a Customer Account?	13-5
§ 13:1.1	SEC Rules Defining Customer and Account	13-6
§ 13:1.2	FINRA Rules Defining Customer	13-7
§ 13:1.3	MSRB Rules Defining Customer and Accounts	13-9
§ 13:1.4	Telemarketing Rules.....	13-10
§ 13:1.5	Regulation S-P Definitions of Consumer and Customer	13-10
§ 13:1.6	USA PATRIOT Act Definitions of Customer and Account.....	13-11
[A]	CIP Rule	13-11
[B]	USA PATRIOT Act	13-11
§ 13:1.7	Regulation S-ID Definitions of Customer and Account.....	13-12
§ 13:2	Establishment of Customer Accounts	13-13
§ 13:2.1	Customer Information Collection Requirements	13-13
[A]	SEC Requirements for Customer Account Information	13-14
[B]	FINRA Requirements for Customer Account Information	13-16
[C]	MSRB Requirements for Customer Account Information	13-20

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

[D]	CIP and AML Rules for Customer	
	Account Information	13-21
[D][1]	CIP Rule	13-21
[D][2]	AML Rules	13-24
[E]	OFAC Checks	13-27
[F]	Clearing Arrangements	13-27
[G]	Customers Who Are Associated Persons	13-28
[H]	Customers Which Are Not Natural Persons	13-29
§ 13:2.2	Account Review and Approval Requirements	13-30
[A]	SEC Account Opening Rules	13-30
[B]	FINRA Account Opening Rules	13-30
[C]	MSRB Account Opening Rules	13-32
[D]	Account Opening Under an AML Program	13-32
[E]	CIP Review at Account Opening	13-32
[F]	OFAC Rules	13-32
[G]	Special Rules for Approval of Certain	
	Types of Accounts	13-33
[G][1]	Warrants, Options Accounts and Securities	
	Futures Accounts	13-33
[G][2]	Day-Trading Accounts	13-34
[G][3]	Penny Stock Trading Accounts	13-34
[G][4]	Variable Annuity Accounts	13-35
[G][5]	Fee-Based Accounts.....	13-35
[G][6]	Discretionary Accounts.....	13-36
§ 13:2.3	Account Opening Disclosures and	
	Notifications	13-36
[A]	Customer Account Record Notification	
	Requirements	13-36
[B]	Complaint Department Notification	13-37
[C]	CIP Notice	13-38
[D]	Privacy Notice.....	13-38
[E]	Business Continuity Plan Notice.....	13-39
[F]	Notices of Clearing Arrangements.....	13-39
[G]	Bank Networking Arrangements	13-39
[H]	SIPC Information	13-40
[I]	Margin Account Disclosures.....	13-40
[J]	Special Account and Transaction Disclosures.....	13-41
[K]	Payment for Order Flow Disclosures	13-42
[L]	Extended Hours Trading Risk Disclosures.....	13-43
[M]	Rule Proposals.....	13-43
§ 13:2.4	Customer Account Agreements	13-44
[A]	SEC Rules Pertaining to Customer	
	Account Agreements.....	13-44
[B]	FINRA Rules Pertaining to Customer	
	Account Agreements.....	13-44
[C]	Pre-Dispute Arbitration Clauses	13-45

Table of Contents

§ 13:3	Maintenance of Customer Accounts	13-46
§ 13:3.1	Record Retention Requirements.....	13-46
§ 13:3.2	Location Requirements	13-46
§ 13:3.3	Reliance on Third Parties.....	13-47
§ 13:3.4	Safeguarding Customer Account Information	13-47
§ 13:4	Changes in Account Information	13-49
§ 13:4.1	Change of Account Name or Address.....	13-49
§ 13:4.2	Other Change in Account Information	13-50
§ 13:4.3	Change in Options Account and Security Futures Account Information	13-50
§ 13:4.4	Thirty-Six-Month Updating of Account Information.....	13-51
§ 13:5	Changes in Terms and Conditions of Customer Accounts	13-51
§ 13:5.1	Change in Fees.....	13-51
§ 13:5.2	Changes in Margin Account Terms	13-52
§ 13:5.3	Changes in Clearing Arrangements.....	13-52
§ 13:6	Account Activity	13-52
§ 13:6.1	Customer Account Ledger	13-52
§ 13:6.2	Receipts for and Disbursements from Customer Accounts	13-52
§ 13:6.3	Negotiable Instruments Drawn from Customer Bank Accounts	13-53
§ 13:6.4	Monitoring Customer Accounts	13-53
§ 13:7	Dealing with Customers.....	13-55
§ 13:7.1	General Duties.....	13-55
§ 13:7.2	Customer Orders	13-55
[A]	Recommendations	13-55
[B]	Soliciting and Taking Customer Orders.....	13-56
[C]	Entering and Recording Customer Orders	13-58
[D]	Executing Customer Orders.....	13-59
[E]	Approving Orders; Diligence Requirements.....	13-60
[F]	Orders for Discretionary Accounts	13-62
[G]	Settling Customer Transactions.....	13-63
§ 13:7.3	Offering New Products.....	13-63
§ 13:7.4	Collateral Transactions with Customers	13-63
[A]	No Guarantees.....	13-63
[B]	Sharing in Customer Profits or Losses	13-63
[C]	Borrowing or Lending to Customers.....	13-64
[D]	Sharing Commissions with Non-Members	13-64
[E]	Extending Credit on New Offerings Where a Broker-Dealer Is a Member of the Selling Group.....	13-65
[F]	Broker-Dealer Self-Offerings.....	13-65

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

§ 13:7.5	Handling of Customer Funds and Securities	13-65
[A]	Record-Making Requirements	13-65
[B]	Cash Reporting Requirements	13-66
[C]	Segregation and Control Requirements for Customer Funds and Securities	13-66
[D]	Escrow Account Requirements	13-67
[E]	Use of Customer Funds of Securities	13-67
§ 13:7.6	Gifts and Entertainment for Customers	13-68
§ 13:8	Customer Communications	13-69
§ 13:8.1	Transaction Disclosure Requirements.....	13-69
[A]	Non-Municipal Securities Transaction Confirmations.....	13-69
[B]	Municipal Securities Transaction Confirmations.....	13-75
[C]	Disclosure for Certain Other Types of Transactions.....	13-76
§ 13:8.2	Periodic Account Statement Requirements.....	13-77
[A]	General Periodic Account Statement Requirements	13-77
[B]	Other Periodic Account Statement Requirements	13-79
[C]	Person Entitled to Confirmations and Account Statements.....	13-80
[D]	Record Retention Requirements for Confirmations.....	13-81
§ 13:8.3	Other Periodic Notices.....	13-82
[A]	Notice of Public Disclosure Program	13-82
[B]	SIPC Notice	13-83
[C]	Payment for Order Flow.....	13-83
[D]	Financial Statements	13-84
[E]	SRO Rules.....	13-84
§ 13:8.4	Electronic Delivery to Customers of Required Reports and Information.....	13-84
§ 13:8.5	Correspondence and Other Communications with Customers	13-85
§ 13:8.6	Duty to Forward Communications.....	13-87
§ 13:9	Customer Complaints and Disputes	13-87
§ 13:9.1	Response to and Resolution of Customer Complaints	13-87
§ 13:9.2	Use of SRO Arbitration Forum.....	13-88
§ 13:9.3	Settlement Agreements.....	13-88
§ 13:9.4	Reserving for Contingencies.....	13-88
§ 13:9.5	Reporting Requirements.....	13-89
§ 13:10	Transferring and Closing Customer Accounts.....	13-90

Table of Contents

§ 13:10.1	Customer-Initiated Transfers	13-90
§ 13:10.2	Firm-Initiated Transfers of Customer Accounts	13-91
[A]	Change in Money Market Sweep Account	13-91
[B]	Bulk Transfer by Member Firm	13-92
[C]	Block Transfer of Representative's Customer Accounts	13-94
[D]	AML Considerations.....	13-95
[E]	Closing Customer Accounts	13-95
§ 13:11	Relevant Retention Requirements.....	13-96
§ 13:11.1	Customer Account Records	13-96
§ 13:11.2	Customer Communications	13-97
§ 13:11.3	Supervisory Records	13-97
§ 13:11.4	Customer Complaint Records	13-97
§ 13:11.5	Electronic Storage Requirements.....	13-98

PART IV: Compensation Practices

Chapter 14 Compensation

Susan Krawczyk

§ 14:1	Introduction.....	14-5
§ 14:2	Compensation for Effecting Securities Transactions.....	14-5
§ 14:2.1	Common Practices for Compensating Broker-Dealers.....	14-6
[A]	Securities Trades	14-6
[B]	Securities Offerings	14-7
§ 14:2.2	Disclosure Requirements for Compensation Arrangements.....	14-8
[A]	Transaction Confirmation Disclosure Requirements	14-8
[A][1]	SEC Confirmation Disclosure Rules.....	14-9
[A][1][a]	Basic Compensation Disclosure Requirement.....	14-9
[A][1][b]	Disclosure of Odd-Lot Fees	14-10
[A][1][c]	Disclosure of Rebates	14-11
[A][1][d]	Disclosure of Payments for Order Flow	14-11
[A][1][e]	Penny Stock Compensation Disclosures.....	14-11
[A][2]	Confirmations for Transactions Subject to FINRA Rules.....	14-12
[A][2][a]	Mutual Fund Deferred Sales Charge Disclosure	14-13
[A][3]	Confirmations for Municipal Securities	14-13

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

[A][4]	Confirmations for Mutual Fund Transactions.....	14-14
[A][4][a]	Evolution of Mutual Fund Compensation Practices	14-15
[A][4][b]	SEC Staff Inquiry in 1994.....	14-16
[A][4][c]	Class Action Litigation	14-16
[A][4][d]	2003 Enforcement Proceeding.....	14-17
[A][5]	Proposed Point-of-Sale and Confirmation Rules	14-18
[A][6]	Proposed Amendments to SEC Confirmation Rule.....	14-19
[A][7]	Proposed Amendments for Fixed Income Securities and Municipal Securities.....	14-19
[B]	Offering Document Disclosure Requirements	14-20
[B][1]	Disclosures Applicable to Corporate Offerings	14-20
[B][1][a]	SEC Registration Statement Forms.....	14-21
[B][1][b]	FINRA Corporate Financing Rule	14-22
[B][1][c]	FINRA Direct Participation Program Rule	14-24
[B][2]	Disclosures Applicable to Mutual Fund Offerings	14-25
[B][2][a]	SEC Registration Statement Form	14-25
[B][2][a][i]	Prospectus Disclosure	14-25
[B][2][a][ii]	SAI Disclosure	14-26
[B][2][a][iii]	Part C Disclosure.....	14-27
[B][2][a][iv]	Summary Prospectus	14-27
[B][2][b]	FINRA Investment Company Rule	14-28
[B][2][c]	Disclosure Proposals	14-28
[B][3]	Disclosures Applicable to Variable Insurance Contracts Offerings.....	14-29
[B][4]	Disclosures Applicable to Municipal Securities Offerings.....	14-30
[B][5]	Private and Exempt Offerings	14-31
[B][6]	Additional Fees When Participating in Offerings	14-32
[C]	Antifraud Provisions	14-32
[C][1]	Rule 10b-5 Under the Exchange Act.....	14-32
[C][2]	Section 17(a)(2) of the Securities Act.....	14-33
[C][3]	SRO Antifraud Rules	14-34
[C][4]	State Antifraud and Business Practice Rules....	14-34
§ 14:2.3	Regulatory Restrictions on Compensation Arrangements.....	14-36
[A]	Restrictions on Compensation for Securities Trades	14-36

Table of Contents

[A][1]	Commissions, Markups and Markdowns.....	14-36
[A][1][a]	FINRA Fair Prices and Commissions Rule	14-37
[A][1][a][i]	Department of Justice Investigation	14-39
[A][1][a][ii]	Proposals.....	14-40
[A][1][b]	MSRB Prices and Commissions Rule	14-41
[A][1][c]	Best Execution Rule.....	14-44
[A][2]	Restrictions on Other Fees and Charges.....	14-44
[A][3]	Alternative Fee Structures: Asset-Based Fee Brokerage Accounts.....	14-45
[B]	Restrictions on Compensation for Securities Offerings	14-47
[B][1]	SEC-Registered Offerings	14-47
[B][1][a]	Corporate Offerings and the FINRA Corporate Financing Rule	14-48
[B][1][a][i]	Prohibition on Certain Hiring Practices	14-50
[B][1][a][ii]	Indeterminate Compensation.....	14-50
[B][1][a][iii]	Non-Cash Compensation	14-50
[B][1][b]	FINRA Direct Participation Programs.....	14-51
[B][1][b][i]	Indeterminate Compensation.....	14-53
[B][1][b][ii]	Non-Cash Compensation.....	14-53
[B][1][b][iii]	Rollup Transactions	14-54
[B][1][b][iv]	Proposals to Amend the Compensation Provisions	14-55
[B][1][c]	Mutual Funds.....	14-55
[B][1][c][i]	Sales Charge Limits	14-57
[B][1][c][ii]	Fairness Standards	14-59
[B][1][c][iii]	Rule 12b-1 Fees.....	14-59
[B][1][c][iv]	Uniform Sales Charges, Breakpoints and Discounts.....	14-60
[B][1][c][v]	Breakpoint Compliance	14-61
[B][1][c][vi]	B Share Sales	14-62
[B][1][c][vii]	Compensation Through Portfolio Transactions.....	14-63
[B][1][c][viii]	2004 Ban on Directed Brokerage Arrangements	14-67
[B][1][c][ix]	Receipt of Securities As Compensation	14-68
[B][1][c][x]	Non-Cash Compensation.....	14-68
[B][1][c][xi]	Additional Charges to Customer	14-69
[B][1][c][xii]	The Broker Exception	14-69
[B][1][d]	Variable Insurance Contracts	14-70
[B][2]	Private Offerings—Private Placements.....	14-72
§ 14:2.4	General Conduct Rules.....	14-72
§ 14:3	Sharing in Securities Transaction Compensation.....	14-73
§ 14:3.1	When Compensation Triggers Registration Requirements	14-73

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

	[A]	Exemptions and Exclusions	14-74
	[B]	Safe Harbor for Issuers and Their Associated Persons.....	14-75
§ 14:3.2		Regulation of Compensation Sharing Arrangements Among Broker-Dealers.....	14-76
	[A]	Arrangements with Other Members.....	14-76
	[A][1]	Generally	14-76
	[A][2]	Rules for Offerings	14-77
	[B]	Compensation Sharing Arrangements with Non-Member Firms	14-78
	[B][1]	Arrangements with Exempt Parties	14-79
§ 14:3.3		Restrictions on Other Compensation Sharing Arrangements.....	14-80
	[A]	Owners	14-80
	[B]	Finder's Fees and Referral Arrangements	14-80
	[C]	Networking Arrangements.....	14-84
	[C][1]	Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act	14-85
	[C][2]	Financial Institution Networking Arrangements	14-86
	[C][3]	Insurance Agency Networking Arrangements	14-88
	[D]	Affinity Arrangements	14-89
	[E]	Accounting Firm Arrangements.....	14-90
	[F]	Administrative Services Arrangements	14-92
	[G]	Payroll Processing, Employee Leasing and Paymaster Arrangements	14-92
	[G][1]	Payroll Processing and Employee Leasing Services	14-93
	[G][2]	Affiliated Adviser Paymaster Arrangements.....	14-94
	[G][3]	Insurance Company Paymaster Arrangements	14-95
	[G][4]	Other Paymaster Arrangements.....	14-96
	[H]	Payment to Selling Firms on Behalf of Distributor	14-97
	[I]	Sale of a Broker-Dealer Firm or Its Accounts	14-97
	[J]	Rebates and Gifts to Customers	14-97
	[J][1]	Securities Trades	14-97
	[J][2]	Offerings	14-98
	[J][3]	Gifts and Entertainment.....	14-100
§ 14:4		Payments to Associated Persons	14-102
§ 14:4.1		General Rules and Principles Governing Payments to Associated Persons	14-103
	[A]	Compensation Practices and Methodology.....	14-104
	[B]	Registration Requirements for Associated Persons.....	14-105

Table of Contents

[C]	Compensation Restrictions Due to Registration Classification	14-106
[D]	Receipt of Securities Compensation from an Unregistered Person	14-108
[E]	Receipt of Compensation from Another Member	14-109
[F]	Assignments of Compensation by Registered Persons	14-111
[G]	Payments to Former Registered Persons	14-112
[H]	Sharing Compensation with Other Registered Persons	14-115
[I]	Receipt of Compensation for Other Business Activities	14-115
§ 14:4.2	Regulation of Cash Compensation	14-116
[A]	Tully Committee Report on Compensation Practices	14-117
[B]	Regulatory Response to the Tully Report	14-119
[C]	Other Proposals Governing Cash Compensation to Associated Persons	14-122
[D]	FINRA Conflicts of Interest Report	14-123
§ 14:4.3	Regulation of Non-Cash Compensation for Associated Persons in Securities Offerings	14-123
[A]	Overview	14-123
[B]	Definition of Non-Cash Compensation	14-124
[C]	Applicable to All Associated Persons	14-124
[D]	"In Connection With" Requirement	14-125
[E]	Restrictions on Associated Person Receipt of Stock and Other Securities	14-125
[F]	Exceptions for Permissible Non-Cash Compensation	14-126
[F][1]	Non-Incentive Small Gifts, Meals and Entertainment	14-126
[F][2]	Non-Incentive Training and Education	14-126
[F][3]	Incentive Non-Cash Compensation Programs	14-129
[F][3][a]	Total Production	14-130
[F][3][b]	Nature of Non-Cash Compensation	14-131
[G]	Other Compensation	14-131
[H]	Proposals	14-132
§ 14:4.4	Recordkeeping Requirements	14-132
§ 14:4.5	Disclosure Requirements	14-134

Chapter 15 Mark-Ups

Stephanie Nicolas & Tiffany J. Smith

§ 15:1	Introduction.....	15-3
§ 15:2	Regulatory Schemes.....	15-4
§ 15:2.1	Federal Securities Laws.....	15-4
[A]	Antifraud Provisions Under the Securities Laws.....	15-5
[B]	Mark-Up Disclosure Requirements: SEC Rules 10b-10 and 15g-4.....	15-7
[B][1]	SEC Rule 10b-10: Confirmations.....	15-7
[B][2]	SEC Rule 15g-4: Penny Stock Transactions.....	15-10
[C]	Liability for Failure to Supervise.....	15-10
§ 15:2.2	FINRA Rules and Interpretations.....	15-11
[A]	FINRA Rules.....	15-11
[B]	FINRA Mark-Up Policy: Supplementary Material .01 to FINRA Rule 2121.....	15-14
[C]	FINRA Debt Mark-Up Policy: Supplementary Material .02 to FINRA Rule 2121.....	15-18
[D]	Net Trading by Market Makers: FINRA Rule 2124.....	15-19
[E]	Liability for Failure to Supervise.....	15-20
§ 15:2.3	MSRB Rules.....	15-22
[A]	Pricing Guidelines.....	15-23
[B]	Disclosure Requirements.....	15-27
§ 15:2.4	Blue Sky Laws.....	15-27
§ 15:3	Determining Prevailing Market Price.....	15-29
§ 15:3.1	Prevailing Market Price Generally.....	15-29
§ 15:3.2	Prevailing Market Price for Firms That Are Not Acting As Market Makers.....	15-30
[A]	Contemporaneous Cost.....	15-30
[B]	Prices in Inter-Dealer Transactions.....	15-32
[C]	Quotations.....	15-32
§ 15:3.3	Prevailing Market Price for Firms That Act As Market Makers.....	15-34
[A]	Use of Inter-Dealer Prices for Actively Traded Securities.....	15-34
[B]	Use of Quotations for Active and Competitive Markets.....	15-36
[C]	Use of Contemporaneous Cost for Inactive But Competitive Markets.....	15-38
[D]	Dominated and Controlled Markets.....	15-38
[E]	Market Maker Status in the Debt Markets.....	15-43

Table of Contents

§ 15:3.4 Prevailing Market Price for Debt Securities (Except Municipal Securities): FINRA's Debt Mark-Up Policy..... 15-46

 [A] The Contemporaneous Cost Presumption 15-47

 [B] Overcoming the Presumption 15-47

 [C] The Hierarchy of Pricing Information 15-48

 [D] Analysis of "Similar Securities" 15-49

 [E] Economic Models 15-50

 [F] Exclusion of Certain Transactions with Institutional Customers..... 15-50

§ 15:3.5 Prevailing Market Price for Municipal Securities..... 15-53

§ 15:4 Guidelines for Determining Whether a Mark-Up Is "Excessive" 15-54

 § 15:4.1 General Principles..... 15-54

 [A] Relevance of Industry Standards 15-55

 [B] Relevance of Risk..... 15-56

 § 15:4.2 Mark-Ups on Equity Securities 15-57

 § 15:4.3 Mark-Ups on Debt Securities 15-58

 [A] Generally 15-58

 [B] High Yield Bonds 15-61

 § 15:4.4 Mark-Ups on Municipal Securities..... 15-63

 § 15:4.5 Mark-Ups on Zero-Coupon Securities..... 15-67

 § 15:4.6 Mark-Ups on Treasury Securities..... 15-69

 [A] Generally 15-69

 [B] Yield Burning..... 15-71

 § 15:4.7 Mark-Ups on GNMA Securities 15-73

 § 15:4.8 Mark-Ups on CMOs..... 15-73

§ 15:5 Antitrust Challenges to the Regulation of Mark-Ups 15-75

PART V: Regulation of Information

Chapter 16 Insider Trading

Seth T. Taube & Bridget Moore

§ 16:1 Insider Trading Defined..... 16-3

 § 16:1.1 Definition by Plain Language of the Statute and Accompanying Rule Promulgated by the SEC 16-3

 [A] The Statute: Section 10(b) 16-3

 [B] The Rule: 10b-5 16-4

[C]	Summary of Theories of Liability Under Rule 10b-5	16-6
[C][1]	Traditional Insider Trading	16-6
[C][2]	Misappropriation Theory.....	16-7
§ 16:1.2	The Law As Shaped Through Interpretation of the Courts.....	16-8
[A]	Traditional Insider Trading	16-8
[A][1]	<i>In re Cady, Roberts & Co.</i> : Abstain or Disclose	16-8
[A][2]	<i>Blue Chip Stamps v. Manor Drug Stores</i> : Implying a Private Right of Action	16-10
[A][3]	<i>Ernst & Ernst v. Hochfelder</i> : Scienter	16-11
[A][4]	<i>Santa Fe Industries, Inc. v. Green</i> : All About Fraud	16-13
[A][5]	<i>Chiarella v. United States</i> : The Case for Fiduciary Duty.....	16-14
[B]	Derivative or Tipper/Tippee Liability	16-17
[B][1]	<i>Dirks v. SEC</i> : Beyond “Insider” Trading	16-17
[B][2]	<i>U.S. v. Newman</i> : The Limits to Tipper/Tippee Liability.....	16-20
[C]	Quasi-Insider Liability	16-24
[C][1]	<i>Dirks v. SEC</i> : “Temporary Insider” Trading	16-24
[D]	Misappropriation Theory.....	16-25
[D][1]	<i>United States v. O’Hagan</i> : “Outsider Insider” Trading.....	16-25
[D][2]	<i>United States v. Newman</i> : Criminal Acts of Insider Trading.....	16-26
[D][3]	<i>SEC v. Materia</i> : Misappropriation in the Civil Context	16-28
[D][4]	<i>Carpenter v. United States</i> : Fraud on the Market	16-29
[D][5]	<i>United States v. Chestman</i> : What Exactly Is a Fiduciary?.....	16-31
[D][6]	<i>United States v. O’Hagan</i> : Misappropriation—No Turning Back	16-33
[D][7]	<i>United States v. Cassese</i> : Imposing Limitations on Misappropriation.....	16-37
§ 16:1.3	Law Prohibiting Trading on Material Nonpublic Information in the Context of a Tender Offer.....	16-39
[A]	Section 14(e) and Rule 14e-3(a)	16-39
[A][1]	<i>Chestman</i> and <i>O’Hagan</i>	16-40
[A][2]	<i>United States v. Cassese</i>	16-42

Table of Contents

§ 16:2 Insider Trading Issues Created by Rules 10b5-1 and 10b5-2..... 16-45

§ 16:2.1 Rule 10b5-1: Written Stock Purchase Plans by Insiders 16-45

[A] Background 16-46

[B] Impact of Rule 10b5-1 on Insider Trading Litigation 16-48

[C] Rule 10b5-1 As a Defense..... 16-51

[D] SEC’s Increased Focus on 10b5-1 Plans 16-51

[E] Vicarious Liability for Brokerage Firms..... 16-53

§ 16:2.2 Rule 10b5-2: Duties of Trust or Confidence for Misappropriation Liability..... 16-54

[A] Attempting to Define a “Fiduciary-Like Relationship” 16-54

[B] Potential Liability Arising Out of Confidentiality Agreements 16-55

§ 16:3 SEC’s Corporate Penalty Policy 16-60

§ 16:4 Types of Compliance Procedures 16-62

§ 16:4.1 Firewalls 16-63

§ 16:4.2 Restricted Lists and Other Monitoring Tools..... 16-64

§ 16:4.3 Communication and Education..... 16-65

§ 16:5 Insider Trading Enforcement in Specific Contexts 16-65

§ 16:5.1 Against Financial Industry Professionals 16-66

[A] “Squawk Box” Cases 16-66

[B] Inadequate Firewalls 16-67

[C] Trading from Behind Firewalls..... 16-67

§ 16:5.2 Against Hedge Funds 16-68

§ 16:5.3 In Connection with PIPES..... 16-75

§ 16:5.4 In Connection with Expert-Network Firms 16-80

§ 16:5.5 In Connection with Credit Default Swaps 16-81

§ 16:6 Impact of Dodd-Frank 16-84

§ 16:6.1 Whistleblower Provision 16-84

§ 16:6.2 Expanded Administrative Powers..... 16-86

§ 16:7 Conclusion 16-88

Chapter 17 Research Analysts

John T. Bostelman

SUMM 17:1 Summary..... 17-4

SUMM 17:1.1 Overview 17-4

SUMM 17:1.2 SRO Research Rules 17-5

[A] Research Department Separation..... 17-5

[B] Prohibition on Research Soliciting Investment Banking Business 17-5

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

[C]	Prohibition on Research Analyst Participation in Road Shows	17-6
[D]	No Three-Way Meetings Involving Investors	17-6
[E]	Requirement of Fair and Balanced Communications	17-6
[F]	Analyst Compensation	17-6
[G]	Blackout on Research and Public Appearances in Connection with Offerings	17-6
[H]	Research Blackout When “Lock-Ups” Expire	17-7
[I]	Termination of Coverage	17-7
[J]	Analyst Trading Restrictions	17-7
[K]	Disclosure Requirements	17-7
[L]	Analyst Exams	17-7
[M]	Supervisory Procedures	17-7
[N]	Emerging Growth Companies	17-7
	SUMM 17:1.3 SEC’s Analyst Certification Rules	17-7
	SUMM 17:1.4 Global Research Analyst Settlement	17-8
§ 17:1	Overview	17-9
§ 17:1.1	Initial Regulatory Inquiries	17-9
§ 17:1.2	From Inquiry to Regulation	17-10
[A]	SRO Rulemaking and SOA Section 501	17-10
[B]	SEC Rulemaking	17-12
[C]	Global Research Settlement	17-12
§ 17:2	SOA Requirements	17-14
§ 17:2.1	Summary of SOA Section 501	17-14
§ 17:2.2	Legislative History	17-16
§ 17:3	SRO Research Rules	17-17
§ 17:3.1	Summary	17-17
[A]	The SRO Research Rules	17-18
[B]	Evolution of SRO Research Rules	17-21
§ 17:3.2	Definition of Research Report	17-23
[A]	Excluded Material	17-24
[B]	Third-Party Research	17-26
§ 17:3.3	Definition of Public Appearance	17-29
§ 17:3.4	Definition of Research Analyst	17-30
§ 17:3.5	Research Department Separation	17-32
[A]	No Supervision of Research by Investment Banking	17-32
[B]	Restrictions on Prepublication Review of Research by Non-Research Personnel	17-33

Table of Contents

[C]	Restrictions on Prepublication Review of Research by Subject Companies	17-33
[D]	Prohibition on Promises of Favorable Research.....	17-34
[E]	Prohibition on Directing Analysts to Undertake Selling or Marketing Efforts	17-35
§ 17:3.6	Prohibition on Research Solicitation of Investment Banking Business	17-36
§ 17:3.7	Prohibition on Road Show Participation.....	17-37
§ 17:3.8	Prohibition on Three-Way Communications Involving Investors.....	17-38
§ 17:3.9	Requirement of Fair and Balanced Communications	17-39
§ 17:3.10	Review of Analyst Compensation	17-40
§ 17:3.11	Quiet Periods for Research and Public Appearances	17-42
[A]	Managers and Co-Managers of Securities Offering.....	17-42
[B]	Participating Underwriters and Dealers	17-44
[C]	Upon Expiration of “Lock-Up” Agreements	17-45
§ 17:3.12	Notice of Termination of Coverage.....	17-46
§ 17:3.13	Restrictions on Personal Trading by Research Analysts	17-47
[A]	Prohibition Against Purchasing or Receiving Pre-IPO Securities	17-48
[B]	Blackout Periods	17-48
[C]	Trading Against Recommendation.....	17-49
[D]	Limited Exceptions	17-49
[E]	Application to Supervisors of Research Analysts	17-50
§ 17:3.14	Disclosure Requirements	17-51
[A]	Conflicts of Interest	17-51
[A][1]	Securities Ownership and Employment Disclosures	17-51
[A][2]	Additional Disclosures by Member Firms	17-52
[A][3]	Additional Disclosure by Analysts.....	17-55
[A][4]	All Other Actual, Material Conflicts	17-56
[B]	Meaning and Distribution of Ratings	17-56
[C]	Price Charts and Price Targets	17-57
[D]	Market Making	17-57
[E]	Manner of Disclosure	17-57
[F]	Special Rules for Compendium Reports	17-59
[G]	SRO Staffs’ Recommendation for Disclosure Presentation	17-59

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

§ 17:3.15	Registration, Qualification, and Continuing Education for Research Analysts.....	17-60
§ 17:3.16	Supervisory Procedures	17-62
§ 17:3.17	Permanent Exemption for Small Firms	17-62
§ 17:3.18	Significant Additions in the 2008 FINRA Proposal	17-63
§ 17:3.19	2012 Amendments Addressing Emerging Growth Companies.....	17-64
§ 17:4	SEC’s Regulation AC (Analyst Certification).....	17-66
§ 17:4.1	Summary	17-66
§ 17:4.2	Certification of Research Reports.....	17-66
§ 17:4.3	Public Appearances	17-68
§ 17:4.4	“Covered Persons”—Application of Regulation AC to Persons Associated with a Broker-Dealer	17-70
[A]	Application to Investment Advisers and Banks	17-73
[B]	Application to the News Media	17-73
§ 17:4.5	Third-Party Research.....	17-74
§ 17:4.6	Interpretive Guidance on What Is and Is Not Research for Regulation AC.....	17-75
§ 17:4.7	Who Is a Research Analyst?.....	17-77
§ 17:4.8	Application to Research Provided by Non-U.S. Firms	17-78
§ 17:4.9	Alternative Compliance Methods for Certain Research.....	17-79
[A]	Quantitative and Technical Research.....	17-79
[B]	Compendium Reports.....	17-79
§ 17:4.10	Supervision and Review of Research.....	17-80
§ 17:4.11	Enforcement; Fraud Liability Under the Federal Securities Laws	17-81
§ 17:5	Global Research Analyst Settlement.....	17-82
§ 17:5.1	Summary	17-82
§ 17:5.2	Scope.....	17-85
[A]	U.S.-Oriented Applicability.....	17-85
[B]	Definition of Research Report.....	17-86
[B][1]	Equity Research	17-86
[B][2]	Excepted Communications.....	17-86
[C]	Definition of Research	17-88
[D]	Definition of Investment Banking	17-88
[E]	Exempt Investment Adviser Affiliates.....	17-88
§ 17:5.3	Physical Separation	17-89
§ 17:5.4	Reporting Lines	17-89

Table of Contents

§ 17:5.5	Communications Firewalls Between Research and Investment Banking.....	17-90
[A]	Views About the Merits of a Proposed Transaction, a Potential Candidate for a Transaction, or Market or Industry Trends, Conditions or Developments.....	17-90
[B]	Communications to Commitment or Similar Committee	17-92
[C]	Confirming the Adequacy of Disclosure	17-93
[D]	Post-Mandate Communications	17-93
[D][1]	Views on Pricing and Structuring.....	17-93
[D][2]	Sales Force Education	17-93
[E]	Conferences	17-95
[F]	Matters of General Firm Interest.....	17-95
[G]	Legal and Compliance Issues.....	17-96
[H]	Communications Not Related to Research or Investment Banking.....	17-96
§ 17:5.6	Prohibition on Soliciting Investment Banking Business	17-96
[A]	Particular Communications with Issuer at Issuer's Request.....	17-97
[B]	No Three-Way Meetings	17-97
§ 17:5.7	Prohibition on Road Show Participation.....	17-98
§ 17:5.8	Marketing and Selling Efforts	17-98
§ 17:5.9	Research Coverage Decisions.....	17-99
§ 17:5.10	Termination of Research Coverage	17-100
§ 17:5.11	Research Oversight	17-101
§ 17:5.12	Research Budget	17-101
§ 17:5.13	Compensation and Evaluation of Research Personnel	17-102
§ 17:5.14	Legal and Compliance	17-103
§ 17:5.15	Policies and Procedures to Restrict Influence over Research	17-104
§ 17:5.16	Independent Monitor.....	17-104
§ 17:5.17	Obligation to Provide Independent, Third-Party Research.....	17-105
§ 17:5.18	Additional Disclosures.....	17-106
[A]	Disclosures in Research Reports	17-106
[B]	Disclosures Regarding Analyst Performance.....	17-106
§ 17:5.19	Amendments and Compliance Certification	17-107
§ 17:5.20	Savings Clauses.....	17-108

VOLUME 2

Table of Chapters	vii
--------------------------------	-----

PART VI: Trading Practices**Chapter 18 Electronic Trading***Andre E. Owens & Jeremy Moorehouse*

§ 18:1	Overview.....	18-5
§ 18:2	General Obligations Related to Trading Activities.....	18-5
§ 18:2.1	Generally.....	18-5
§ 18:2.2	The Customer Relationship.....	18-6
§ 18:2.3	Order Handling and Regulations ATS and NMS	18-6
§ 18:2.4	Short Sales	18-6
§ 18:2.5	Circuit Breakers and the Limit Up/Limit Down Plan	18-9
§ 18:2.6	Other Requirements.....	18-12
§ 18:3	Rise of Electronic Trading.....	18-13
§ 18:4	Exchange Act Section 11A.....	18-16
§ 18:4.1	Generally.....	18-16
§ 18:4.2	The SEC's Mandate and the Objectives of Section 11A.....	18-16
§ 18:4.3	Multiple Competing Markets	18-17
§ 18:4.4	Market Developments.....	18-18
§ 18:5	Regulation ATS.....	18-21
§ 18:5.1	Overview of Regulation ATS	18-21
[A]	Policy Considerations	18-21
[B]	Regulatory Framework	18-22
§ 18:5.2	Definition of Exchange	18-23
[A]	Generally	18-23
[B]	Rule 3b-16 Definition	18-24
[C]	Exclusions	18-25
[D]	Exemptions	18-25
§ 18:5.3	Definition of an ATS	18-26
§ 18:5.4	ATSs That Are Not Required to Comply with Regulation ATS	18-26
[A]	Systems Subject to Other Appropriate Regulations	18-26
[B]	Systems Trading Solely Government and Related Securities.....	18-27
[C]	Systems Exempted by the SEC	18-27

Table of Contents

§ 18:5.5	Requirements of Regulation ATS	18-28
[A]	Requirements Applicable to All ATSS	18-28
[A][1]	Membership in an SRO	18-28
[A][2]	Notice of Operation As an Alternative Trading System and Amendments.....	18-28
[A][3]	Procedures to Ensure Confidential Treatment of Trading Information.....	18-29
[A][4]	Filing Requirements.....	18-30
[A][5]	Recordkeeping.....	18-30
[B]	Additional Requirements for ATSS Meeting 5% Trading Volume Threshold	18-31
[B][1]	Public Order Display and Execution Access Requirements	18-31
[B][1][a]	Market Transparency.....	18-31
[B][1][b]	Obligations of ATSS Under the Public Display Requirement.....	18-32
[B][1][c]	Execution Access to Publicly Displayed Orders	18-33
[B][1][d]	Execution Access Fees	18-33
[B][2]	Fair Access Requirement.....	18-34
[B][2][a]	Importance of Fair Access	18-34
[B][2][b]	Fair Access Requirement	18-34
[C]	Additional Requirements for ATSS Meeting 20% Trading Volume Threshold	18-35
[D]	ATS Volume Reporting Rule	18-36
§ 18:5.6	Regulation ATS: Regulatory Trends and Developments	18-36
[A]	Proposed Amendments to Regulation ATS.....	18-36
[B]	Dark Pool Proposal	18-37
[C]	Recent Enforcement Actions Against ATSS	18-38
[C][1]	Barclays Capital Inc.	18-38
[C][2]	ITG, Inc.	18-39
[C][3]	Liquidnet, Inc.	18-39
[C][4]	eBX, LLC	18-40
§ 18:5.7	Regulation of ATSS As Exchanges.....	18-41
[A]	Generally	18-41
[B]	Self-Regulatory Responsibilities	18-41
[C]	Fair Representation	18-42
[D]	Limitations on Membership	18-42
[E]	Prohibitions on Trading Unregistered Securities.....	18-42
[F]	Participation in the NMS.....	18-42
[G]	Trading Halts	18-43
§ 18:6	Regulation NMS	18-43
§ 18:6.1	Generally.....	18-43

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

§ 18:6.2	Order Protection Rule	18-44
[A]	Generally	18-44
[B]	Definitions	18-45
[C]	Requirements	18-46
[D]	Exceptions	18-47
[D][1]	Self-Help Exception.....	18-47
[D][2]	Intermarket Sweep Order Exception.....	18-47
[D][3]	Exception for Flickering Quotes.....	18-48
[D][4]	Exception for Single-Price Openings, Reopenings, and Closing Transactions	18-48
[D][5]	Exception for Benchmark Trades	18-48
[D][6]	Exception for Stopped Orders	18-49
[D][7]	Exception for Other Than “Regular-Way” Contracts	18-49
[D][8]	Exception for Crossed Quotations	18-49
[D][9]	Exemption for Certain Sub-Penny Trade-Throughs.....	18-49
[D][10]	Exemption for Contingent Trades.....	18-49
[D][11]	Exemption for Print Protection Transactions....	18-50
[D][12]	Exemption for Error Correction Transactions....	18-51
[D][13]	Exemption for Non-Convertible Preferred Securities	18-52
[E]	Compliance.....	18-52
§ 18:6.3	Access Rule	18-53
[A]	Generally	18-53
[B]	Fair and Non-Discriminatory Access.....	18-53
[C]	Access Fees.....	18-54
[D]	Locked and Crossed Quotations	18-54
[E]	Regulation ATS Fair Access Requirements	18-55
§ 18:6.4	Sub-Penny Rule.....	18-55
§ 18:6.5	Rule 602—Quote Rule	18-56
§ 18:6.6	Rule 604—Limit Order Display Rule.....	18-59
§ 18:6.7	Rule 605—Disclosure of Order Execution Information.....	18-60
§ 18:6.8	Rule 606—Disclosure of Order Routing Information.....	18-63
§ 18:6.9	Recent Market Developments.....	18-65
[A]	2010 Market Structure Concept Release	18-65
[A][1]	Undisplayed Liquidity.....	18-66
[A][2]	High-Frequency Trading.....	18-67
[B]	The “Flash Crash”	18-68
§ 18:7	Market Access and Rule 15c3-5.....	18-71
§ 18:7.1	Access to Exchange Systems by Non-Members.....	18-71

Table of Contents

§ 18:7.2	Exchange Act Rule 15c3-5	18-72
[A]	General Requirement.....	18-73
[B]	Definition of Market Access	18-73
[C]	Financial Risk Controls	18-74
[C][1]	Credit/Capital Thresholds	18-74
[C][2]	Setting Credit/Capital Thresholds	18-74
[C][3]	Regulatory Risk Controls.....	18-74
[D]	Restriction on Delegation of Risk Management Functions	18-75
[D][1]	Allocation of Regulatory Risk Controls	18-75
[D][2]	Use of Third-Party Technology to Comply with 15c3-5	18-76
[D][3]	Regular Review of Controls and Procedures/CEO Certification	18-77
§ 18:7.3	SRO Sponsored Access Rules	18-77
§ 18:8	Regulation SCI.....	18-78
§ 18:8.1	Generally.....	18-78
§ 18:8.2	SCI Entities, SCI Systems, and Critical SCI Systems	18-78
§ 18:8.3	Requirements for SCI Entities	18-79
§ 18:8.4	Recordkeeping.....	18-80
§ 18:9	Consolidated Audit Trail.....	18-80
§ 18:10	Dark Pools	18-82
§ 18:10.1	Generally.....	18-82
§ 18:10.2	Regulatory Concerns.....	18-83
[A]	Transparency.....	18-84
[B]	Indications of Interest and Quotations.....	18-84
[B][1]	Use of IOIs	18-85
[B][2]	The Quote Rule	18-85
[B][3]	Regulation ATS Requirements	18-86
[B][4]	Recent SEC Staff Comments Concerning IOIs and Orders.....	18-88
[C]	Price Discovery Considerations	18-89
[D]	Fair Access to Dark Pools	18-89
[E]	Fragmentation.....	18-89
§ 18:11	FINRA Priorities and Initiatives	18-91
§ 18:11.1	FINRA Exam Priorities	18-91
§ 18:11.2	FINRA Guidance for Algorithmic Trading Strategies.....	18-91
§ 18:11.3	FINRA Rule 4552	18-92
§ 18:11.4	OTC Trade Sequencing.....	18-93
§ 18:11.5	OTC Equity Trading Volume	18-93
§ 18:11.6	Tick Size Pilot Program	18-93

Chapter 18A Short Selling

Kay A. Gordon

§ 18A:1	Definition of Short Selling.....	18A-1
§ 18A:2	History of Short Selling.....	18A-2
§ 18A:3	Recent Developments.....	18A-6
§ 18A:4	Current Regulation: The New Uptick Rule	18A-10
§ 18A:4.1	Background.....	18A-10
§ 18A:4.2	Trigger Level	18A-11
§ 18A:4.3	Price Restrictions	18A-12
§ 18A:4.4	Covered Securities	18A-13
§ 18A:4.5	A Policies and Procedures Approach.....	18A-15
§ 18A:4.6	Exceptions: Executing Short Sales While “Circuit Breaker” Price Restriction In Effect.....	18A-18
§ 18A:4.7	SEC Goals and Criticisms.....	18A-21
§ 18A:5	The Dodd-Frank Act.....	18A-22
§ 18A:5.1	Section 929X.....	18A-23
§ 18A:5.2	Section 417.....	18A-23
§ 18A:5.3	Comment Request.....	18A-24

Chapter 19 Best Execution and Customer Order Handling

*Lee A. Schneider, George Braxton Raine &
Brynn M. Rail*

§ 19:1	Introduction.....	19-3
§ 19:1.1	Overview	19-3
§ 19:1.2	Primary Regulators.....	19-4
§ 19:1.3	National Market System.....	19-5
§ 19:1.4	The Flash Crash	19-6
§ 19:2	Market Participants	19-7
§ 19:2.1	Overview	19-7
§ 19:2.2	Broker	19-8
§ 19:2.3	Dealer	19-8
§ 19:2.4	Market Maker/Specialist	19-9
§ 19:2.5	Riskless Principal and Net Trading.....	19-10
§ 19:2.6	Exchanges	19-11
§ 19:2.7	Alternative Trading Systems and Regulation ATS.....	19-12
§ 19:2.8	Other Market Centers, Including the Over-the-Counter Markets.....	19-14
§ 19:2.9	High Frequency Trading.....	19-15
§ 19:3	Best Execution	19-16
§ 19:3.1	Best Execution As Defined Under Common Law.....	19-16

Table of Contents

§ 19:3.2	Best Execution As Defined by the SEC.....	19-17
§ 19:3.3	Best Execution As Defined by FINRA Rule 5310.....	19-17
§ 19:3.4	Best Execution As Defined by Case Law	19-18
§ 19:3.5	Failure to Achieve Best Execution As a Form of Securities Fraud.....	19-19
§ 19:3.6	To Whom and When Is the Duty Owed.....	19-20
§ 19:3.7	Direct Market Access and the Market Access Rule (SEC Rule 15c3-5)	19-21
§ 19:3.8	Evaluation and Procedural Duties in Best Execution	19-22
	[A] “Regular and Rigorous Review”	19-22
	[B] Preferencing	19-24
	[C] Adequate Staffing.....	19-25
§ 19:3.9	Factors in Determining Best Execution	19-25
	[A] Overview	19-25
	[B] Reasonable Diligence	19-26
	[C] Best Price	19-27
	[D] National Best Bid and Offer (NBBO) and <i>Newton</i>	19-29
	[E] Price Improvement	19-30
	[F] Speed and Timing of Execution.....	19-31
	[G] Certainty of Execution.....	19-31
	[H] Anonymity and Other Client-Specific Requests.....	19-32
	[I] Interpositioning	19-33
§ 19:3.10	Transaction Cost Analysis Tools.....	19-33
§ 19:3.11	Best Execution As Viewed from the Registered Investment Adviser’s Perspective.....	19-34
§ 19:3.12	Best Execution in Fixed Income Securities	19-35
§ 19:4	Regulations That Affect How Broker-Dealers Execute Trades	19-36
§ 19:4.1	Overview	19-36
§ 19:4.2	Basic Requirements of Regulation NMS	19-36
	[A] Overview	19-36
	[B] Order/Trade-Through Protection.....	19-39
	[C] Market Data Access and Dissemination	19-40
	[D] Sub-Penny Pricing.....	19-41
	[E] Disclosures of Order Execution Information and Order Routing (Rules 605 and 606).....	19-41
§ 19:4.3	Priority of Customer Orders Over Proprietary Orders.....	19-42
	[A] General Prohibition Under FINRA Rule 5320....	19-42
	[B] Exceptions to the General Prohibition.....	19-43

§ 19:4.4	Priority of Orders As Between Different Customers.....	19-46
§ 19:4.5	Different Order Types	19-47
[A]	Market Order	19-47
[B]	Limit Order Versus Stop Order.....	19-47
[C]	“Held” Versus “Not Held” (Discretionary Orders)	19-49
[D]	Orders Generated by Trading Algorithms	19-49
[E]	Directed Orders	19-50
[F]	Miscellaneous Order Types	19-50
[G]	Odd Lots	19-50
§ 19:4.6	Short Sales	19-51
§ 19:5	Conflict of Interests.....	19-51
§ 19:5.1	Internalization	19-51
§ 19:5.2	Preferencing	19-53
§ 19:5.3	Payment for Order Flow.....	19-53
§ 19:5.4	Affiliated Investment Advisers and Investment Companies.....	19-54
§ 19:6	Books and Records Requirements Associated with Customer Orders	19-54
§ 19:6.1	Order Tickets and Trade Confirmations.....	19-55
§ 19:6.2	Trade Blotters and Records of Executions.....	19-56
§ 19:6.3	Trade Reporting.....	19-57
[A]	Reporting of Trades Done on Exchange.....	19-57
[B]	Reporting to a Trade Reporting Facility for Trades Done Off Exchange.....	19-57
[C]	Order Audit Trail System (OATS) Reporting.....	19-57
[D]	Large Trader ID.....	19-58
[E]	Consolidated Audit Trail (CAT).....	19-58
[F]	Trade Reporting and Compliance Engine (TRACE) Reporting.....	19-59

Chapter 20 Soft Dollars and Other Means of Obtaining Business

Andrew L. Bab & Kenneth J. Berman

§ 20:1	Introduction.....	20-3
§ 20:2	What Are Soft Dollars?.....	20-3
§ 20:3	The Basic Legal Framework: Section 28(e)	20-6
§ 20:3.1	Investment Discretion	20-8
§ 20:3.2	Brokerage Commissions: Agency and Principal Transactions.....	20-9
[A]	Principal Transactions and the 2001 Guidance....	20-9
[B]	Over-the-Counter Agency Transactions	20-11

Table of Contents

[C]	Transactions in Futures	20-11
[D]	Primary Offerings; Selling Concessions and FINRA Rule 5141	20-12
§ 20:3.3	Brokerage and Research Services.....	20-13
[A]	Generally	20-13
[B]	The Eligibility Finding.....	20-15
[B][1]	Research and Publications; the Expression of Reasoning and Knowledge	20-15
[B][2]	Brokerage	20-17
[C]	The Use Finding.....	20-18
[D]	The Reasonableness Finding.....	20-19
[E]	Examples of Services Within and Outside the Safe Harbor.....	20-19
[F]	Mixed-Use Items; Proxy Voting Services	20-24
§ 20:3.4	The “Provided By” and “Effected” Conditions; Step-Out Transactions	20-26
[A]	Generally	20-26
[B]	Multiple Brokers: Commission Sharing and Step-Out Transactions	20-27
[B][1]	Commission-Sharing Arrangements.....	20-27
[B][2]	The Goldman Sachs and Capital Institutional No-Action Letters	20-28
[B][3]	Step-Out Transactions	20-30
§ 20:4	The Investment Adviser’s Obligations and Potential Liabilities	20-31
§ 20:4.1	Generally.....	20-31
§ 20:4.2	Related Liability Theories	20-32
[A]	The Investment Advisers Act	20-32
[A][1]	Section 206.....	20-32
[A][2]	Section 207.....	20-34
[B]	The Exchange Act.....	20-35
[C]	The Securities Act.....	20-35
§ 20:4.3	Disclosure Requirements	20-35
§ 20:4.4	Compliance Procedures and Supervisory Obligations	20-38
§ 20:5	The Broker-Dealer’s Obligations and Potential Liabilities	20-39
§ 20:5.1	Aiding and Abetting the Adviser’s Breach of Fiduciary Duty.....	20-39
§ 20:5.2	The Duty to Supervise: Supervisory and Compliance Procedures.....	20-41
§ 20:5.3	Disclosure—Confirmations	20-43
§ 20:5.4	FINRA Rules	20-44
§ 20:6	Documenting Soft-Dollar Arrangements.....	20-45

§ 20:7	Arrangements Outside the Safe Harbor:	
	Special Issues	20-45
§ 20:7.1	Directed Brokerage Arrangements	20-45
§ 20:7.2	Allocation of Brokerage in Exchange for Distribution of Mutual Fund Shares.....	20-46
§ 20:8	Oversight by Mutual Fund Directors.....	20-50
§ 20:9	The Future of Soft Dollars.....	20-50
§ 20:10	Payment for Order Flow (POF)	20-54
§ 20:10.1	Overview	20-54
§ 20:11	Legal Issues Raised by POF	20-56
§ 20:11.1	Best Execution	20-56
§ 20:11.2	Agency/Principal Issues.....	20-58
§ 20:12	Regulation of POF	20-59
§ 20:13	Conclusion	20-63

Chapter 21 Trading Desk Activities

William D. Edick, Peter D. Santori & James R. Burns

§ 21:1	Introduction.....	21-2
§ 21:2	Regulatory Reviews and Examinations of OATS and Trade Reporting Obligations.....	21-3
§ 21:3	Member Supervision of Trading Activity	21-6
§ 21:4	OATS Reporting and Record-Keeping Obligations	21-10
§ 21:4.1	Description of Securities Reported to OATS.....	21-11
§ 21:4.2	Recording of Order Information	21-11
[A]	Order Origination and Receipt	21-11
[B]	Order Transmittal.....	21-13
[B][1]	Transmittal Within a Member.....	21-13
[B][2]	Electronic Transmittal to a Member Other Than an ECN.....	21-13
[B][3]	Electronic Transmittal to an ECN.....	21-14
[B][4]	Manual Transmittal to a Member Other Than an ECN.....	21-14
[B][5]	Manual Transmittal to an ECN	21-15
[B][6]	Transmittal to a Non-Member	21-16
[C]	Order Modifications, Cancellations, and Executions.....	21-16
[C][1]	Order Modifications.....	21-16
[C][2]	Order Cancellations.....	21-16
[C][3]	Order Executions	21-17
[D]	Record Retention Requirements.....	21-17
§ 21:4.3	FINRA OATS Reporting Requirements.....	21-18
[A]	Reporting Agent Agreements	21-18
[B]	Exemptions for Reporting Manual Orders.....	21-19

Table of Contents

§ 21:5 The SEC’s Consolidated Audit Trail (CAT)..... 21-19

 § 21:5.1 Background 21-19

 § 21:5.2 SRO Obligations to Create the CAT..... 21-20

 § 21:5.3 Persons Required to Report to the CAT 21-22

 § 21:5.4 Events Required to Be Reported to the CAT 21-23

 § 21:5.5 Timing of Reports to the CAT 21-28

 § 21:5.6 The CAT Central Repository 21-29

 § 21:5.7 Implementation of CAT Requirements
 through the NMS Plan 21-32

§ 21:6 The SEC’s Large Trader Reporting Requirements..... 21-41

 § 21:6.1 Large Trader Reporting Obligations 21-41

 § 21:6.2 Additional Broker-Dealer Obligations 21-45

 § 21:6.3 Confidentiality of Form 13H 21-47

§ 21:7 Overview of Equity Transaction Reporting 21-48

 § 21:7.1 Transactions in Listed Securities Effected on a
 National Securities Exchange..... 21-50

 § 21:7.2 Transactions in Listed Securities Effected
 Otherwise Than on an Exchange..... 21-51

 [A] The FINRA/NASDAQ Trade Reporting
 Facility 21-52

 [B] The FINRA/NYSE Trade Reporting Facility 21-53

 [C] The FINRA Alternative Display Facility
 (ADF) 21-53

 § 21:7.3 Transactions in Over-the-Counter Equity
 Securities..... 21-54

 § 21:7.4 Transactions in Restricted Equity Securities 21-55

 § 21:7.5 Transactions in Direct Participation Program
 Securities..... 21-56

 § 21:7.6 Submission of Non-Tape or Clearing-Only
 Reports for Previously Reported Trades..... 21-56

§ 21:8 TRACE Reporting Requirements 21-57

§ 21:9 MSRB Trade Reporting Requirements 21-61

**Chapter 21A Regulation SCI and Trends in IT and
Cybersecurity Regulation, Compliance, and
Enforcement**

*Peter D. Santori, James R. Burns &
Kimberly Beattie Saunders*

§ 21A:1 Introduction 21A-3

§ 21A:2 Background 21A-3

§ 21A:3 Regulatory Framework 21A-6

 § 21A:3.1 Regulation SCI 21A-6

 [A] Overview of Basic Components..... 21A-6

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

[B]	Key Defined Terms	21A-8
[B][1]	SCI Entities	21A-8
[B][2]	SCI Systems, Critical SCI Systems, and Indirect SCI Systems	21A-9
[B][3]	SCI Events	21A-11
[B][3][a]	Systems Disruption.....	21A-12
[B][3][b]	Systems Compliance Issue.....	21A-12
[B][3][c]	Systems Intrusion	21A-12
[B][3][d]	<i>De minimis</i> SCI Events.....	21A-13
§ 21A:3.2	Additional Regulations	21A-13
[A]	Regulation S-P	21A-14
[B]	Market Access Rule—Rule 15c3-5	21A-14
[C]	Regulation S-ID	21A-15
[D]	ATS Operational Disclosures.....	21A-16
[E]	Algorithmic Trading Operations	21A-17
[E][1]	Guidance	21A-17
[E][2]	Rulemaking.....	21A-17
§ 21A:4	Compliance Implications	21A-19
§ 21A:4.1	Overview of Recent SEC and FINRA Focus....	21A-19
[A]	Examination Initiatives	21A-19
[A][1]	SEC Initial Sweep	21A-19
[A][2]	SEC Second Sweep and Risk Alert	21A-20
[A][3]	FINRA Sweep and Report on Cybersecurity Practices.....	21A-22
[A][4]	2016 SEC/NEP and FINRA Priorities	21A-22
[A][4][a]	SEC/NEP 2016 Examination Priorities	21A-22
[A][4][b]	FINRA 2016 Examination Priorities	21A-23
§ 21A:4.2	Practical Application—Significant IT Risk Control Requirements Under Regulation SCI.....	21A-25
[A]	Policies and Procedures.....	21A-25
[A][1]	Risk-Based Approach	21A-25
[A][2]	Utilizing Industry Standards	21A-26
[A][3]	Systems Development Life Cycle.....	21A-27
[A][4]	Systems Testing Requirements	21A-28
[A][5]	Business Continuity/Disaster Recovery Plan Requirements.....	21A-28
[A][6]	Business Continuity/Disaster Recovery Plan Testing	21A-29
[A][7]	Industry-Wide Testing.....	21A-29
[A][8]	Annual SCI Reviews	21A-30
[B]	Monitoring for SCI Events	21A-31
[C]	Administrative Requirements	21A-31
§ 21A:4.3	Practical Application—Regulation SCI Cybersecurity Requirements.....	21A-32

Table of Contents

[A]	Corrective Action, Reporting, and Dissemination Requirements	21A-32
[A][1]	Corrective Action.....	21A-33
[A][2]	SEC Notification.....	21A-33
[A][3]	Dissemination of Information.....	21A-34
§ 21A:4.4	IT Governance Considerations.....	21A-35
[A]	Understanding Roles and Responsibilities.....	21A-35
[B]	Board Involvement.....	21A-35
[C]	Metrics.....	21A-35
§ 21A:4.5	Practical Application—Third-party Considerations	21A-36
[A]	Due Diligence.....	21A-36
[B]	Contractual Provisions	21A-37
[C]	Supervisory Responsibilities.....	21A-37
[D]	SEC Cybersecurity Examination Sweep.....	21A-38
[E]	REG SCI—Third-Party Requirements	21A-38
§ 21A:5	Enforcement Actions.....	21A-39
§ 21A:5.1	Summary of Regulation By Enforcement Action.....	21A-39
§ 21A:5.2	SEC Enforcement Actions	21A-40
[A]	Direct Edge Holdings.....	21A-40
[B]	NASDAQ—Facebook IPO.....	21A-40
[C]	Goldman, Sachs & Co.....	21A-41
[D]	Latour Trading LLC	21A-42
[E]	R.T. Jones Capital Equities	21A-43
[F]	LPL Financial Corp.....	21A-44
[G]	Commonwealth Equity Services	21A-44
[H]	Frederick O. Kraus, David C. Levine, and Marc A. Ellis.....	21A-44
§ 21A:5.3	FINRA Enforcement Actions.....	21A-45
§ 21A:5.4	Future Focus	21A-46
§ 21A:6	Conclusion	21A-47

PART VII: Financial Responsibility

**Chapter 22 Financial Obligations—Net Capital, Customer
Protection, and Financial Reporting**

Elliott R. Curzon

§ 22:1	Overview.....	22-2
§ 22:2	Net Capital Requirements	22-4
§ 22:3	Basic Method	22-5

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

§ 22:3.1	Minimum Fixed Amounts for	
	Broker-Dealer Type.....	22-5
[A]	Clearing or Carrying Accounts	22-5
[B]	Dealers	22-6
[C]	Market Makers	22-6
[D]	Introducing Broker-Dealers	22-7
[E]	Broker-Dealers Limited to Sales of Investment	
	Companies and Variable Products	22-9
[F]	Municipal Securities “Broker’s Broker”	22-9
[G]	Futures Commission Merchants	22-10
[H]	Reverse Repurchase Agreements	22-10
[I]	Specialists	22-10
[J]	Exemptions	22-11
§ 22:3.2	Aggregate Indebtedness	22-12
§ 22:3.3	Alternative Method	22-15
§ 22:3.4	Debt Equity Requirements	22-17
§ 22:4	Computing Net Capital.....	22-18
§ 22:4.1	Adjustments to Net Worth	22-18
[A]	Expense Sharing Agreements	22-20
[B]	Other Types of Non-Allowable Assets	22-22
§ 22:4.2	Adjustments to Net Worth: “Haircuts”	22-24
§ 22:5	Consolidation with Subsidiaries	22-29
§ 22:6	Compliance, Reporting and Notice	
	Requirements	22-30
§ 22:6.1	FOCUS Reports	22-31
§ 22:6.2	Failure to Maintain Minimum Net Capital.....	22-33
§ 22:6.3	Financial Statements	22-35
§ 22:7	Limitations on Withdrawal of Equity Capital	22-36
§ 22:7.1	Early Warning Notices	22-38
§ 22:7.2	Withdrawals of Equity Capital.....	22-40
§ 22:8	“Brokers’ Broker”	22-40
§ 22:9	Options and Commodity Issues	22-41
§ 22:9.1	Listed Options	22-41
§ 22:9.2	Theoretical Pricing Charges Method	22-42
§ 22:9.3	Alternative Strategy Based Method	22-45
§ 22:9.4	Unlisted Options	22-46
§ 22:9.5	Commodities	22-47
§ 22:10	Raising Good Capital Through Subordination	
	Agreements	22-50
§ 22:11	Requirements for OTC Derivatives Dealers	22-55
§ 22:12	Customer Protection.....	22-58
§ 22:12.1	Background	22-58
§ 22:12.2	Possession and Control of Securities	22-59
§ 22:12.3	Special Reserve Account for the Exclusive	
	Benefit of Customers	22-61
§ 22:12.4	Exemptions	22-63

Chapter 23 Reserved

PART VIII: Clearing Activities

Chapter 24 Clearing Broker Liability and Responsibilities

Harry S. Davis & Betty Santangelo

§ 24:1	Introduction.....	24-2
§ 24:2	The Role of the Clearing Firm in the Brokerage Industry	24-3
§ 24:2.1	Evolution of Responsibilities of Clearing Versus Introducing Brokers—NYSE Rule 382, NASD Conduct Rule 3230.....	24-3
§ 24:2.2	Regulatory Developments	24-7
§ 24:2.3	Anti-Money Laundering Obligations of Clearing Brokers	24-13
§ 24:3	Litigation Exposure of Clearing Firms	24-19
§ 24:3.1	Pre- <i>Blech</i> : Most Courts Summarily Rejected a Variety of Customer Claims Against Clearing Brokers	24-20
§ 24:3.2	<i>In re Blech</i>	24-23
§ 24:3.3	Post- <i>Blech</i> Decisions.....	24-25
§ 24:3.4	Isolated Victories for Customers of Introducing Firms	24-33
[A]	Breach of Fiduciary Duty/Apparent Authority/ Aiding and Abetting Fraud.....	24-34
[B]	State Blue Sky Laws	24-35
§ 24:3.5	Alternate Theories of Clearing Broker Liability in the Context of a Bankruptcy by the Introducing Firm's Customer	24-37
[A]	Overview of Fraudulent Transfer Law.....	24-38
[B]	<i>Gredd v. Bear, Stearns Securities Corp.</i>	24-41
[C]	Additional Cases Reflecting the Emergence of Potential "Transferee" Liability for Clearing Brokers	24-55
§ 24:3.6	Arbitrations: More Dangerous Ground for Clearing Brokers	24-66
§ 24:4	Conclusion	24-68

Chapter 25 Clearing Arrangements for Introducing Broker-Dealers

Paul B. Uhlenhop & Michael Wise

§ 25:1	Introduction.....	25-3
§ 25:2	Background of Clearing and Depository Organizations	25-4
§ 25:3	Understanding the Arrangement	25-7
§ 25:4	Key Functions of the Clearing Arrangement	25-9
§ 25:5	FINRA Rule 4311—Carrying Agreements	25-11
§ 25:5.1	Overview	25-11
§ 25:5.2	Regulation SCI.....	25-15
§ 25:5.3	Proposed Rule 17Ad-22 Amendment and New Rule 17Ab2-2.....	25-16
§ 25:6	Introducing Broker Capital and Financial Responsibility Requirements, in General.....	25-17
§ 25:6.1	Exchange Act Rules 15c3-1 and 15c3-3.....	25-17
§ 25:6.2	Net Capital Rule Requirements	25-19
[A]	Top Tier Firms That Do Not Have Restrictions on Type of Activity.....	25-19
[B]	The Two Most Common Capital Rule Minimum Requirements Used by Introducing Brokers	25-19
[C]	Additional Alternatives and Provisions.....	25-20
§ 25:6.3	Exchange Act Rule 15c3-3: Safeguarding Customer Funds and Securities	25-21
[A]	Mutual Fund, Separate Account and S&L Solicitation Exemption	25-22
[B]	Special Account Introducing Brokers.....	25-22
[C]	Introducing Brokers	25-22
§ 25:6.4	Recent SEC Significant Changes to the SEC Financial Responsibility Rules and BD Reporting	25-22
[A]	Background	25-22
[B]	Exchange Act Rule 15c3-3(j) Free Credit Balances and Sweep Program.....	25-24
[C]	Clarification of Balances in Futures Accounts	25-26
[D]	Capital Rule Changes	25-26
§ 25:6.5	Summary	25-27
§ 25:7	Introducing Broker Assets Held by Clearing Firm.....	25-27
§ 25:8	Clearing Deposits and PAB Agreements	25-30
§ 25:9	Check Writing and Local Cashiering	25-31
§ 25:10	Risk Management and ACT	25-32
§ 25:11	AML and OFAC Issues.....	25-33

Table of Contents

§ 25:12	Dodd-Frank Act Amendments to Fair and Accurate Credit Transactions Act of 2003 and Privacy Requirements	25-35
§ 25:13	Introducing Broker Best Execution	25-36
§ 25:14	Piggybacking Arrangements	25-38
§ 25:15	Prime Brokerage Arrangements	25-39
§ 25:15.1	Introduction	25-39
§ 25:15.2	Background	25-40
§ 25:15.3	Execution of the Prime Brokerage Agreements	25-43
§ 25:15.4	Lack of Appropriate Customer Documentation	25-44
§ 25:15.5	Customer Credit and Suitability Obligations	25-44
§ 25:15.6	Executing Broker Risk Control	25-45
§ 25:15.7	Clearing (Prime) Broker Risk Control	25-45
§ 25:15.8	Extension of Credit on Syndicated and Other Public Offerings	25-45
§ 25:15.9	International Prime Brokerage	25-45
§ 25:16	Allocation Between Clearing Firm and Introducing Broker in Connection with Risk Management Controls for Clearing Firms Providing Market Access	25-46
§ 25:17	Considerations in Negotiating a Clearing Arrangement	25-48
§ 25:17.1	Business Activities	25-48
§ 25:17.2	Due Diligence and Clearing Arrangements Checklist	25-48
§ 25:17.3	Amount of Clearing Deposit	25-48
§ 25:17.4	ACT Credit Line	25-49
§ 25:17.5	Cost of Clearing	25-49
§ 25:17.6	PAB	25-49
§ 25:17.7	Financial Reports and Financial Information	25-49
§ 25:17.8	Registration	25-50
§ 25:17.9	Customer Accounts	25-50
§ 25:17.10	Acceptance of Accounts and Sales Practice Obligations	25-50
§ 25:17.11	Compliance Procedures and Exception Reports	25-51
§ 25:17.12	Margin and Extension of Credit	25-51
§ 25:17.13	Maintenance of Books, Records and Reports	25-51
§ 25:17.14	Reports by the Introducing Firm to the Clearing Firm	25-52
§ 25:17.15	Customer Funds and Securities	25-52
§ 25:17.16	Local Deposit of Funds and Drafting Authority	25-52

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

§ 25:17.17	Confirmations and Account Statements.....	25-52
§ 25:17.18	Execution of Orders and Transactions.....	25-53
§ 25:17.19	Clearing Agreement Allocation of Responsibilities and Obligations Between Clearing Firm and Introducing Broker in Connection with Risk Management Controls for Clearing Firms Providing Direct Market Access.....	25-53
§ 25:17.20	New SEC Reporting Rules Regarding BD Annual Reports, Compliance Reports, Exemption Reports, PCAOB Audit Requirements, Form Custody.....	25-54
§ 25:17.21	Return of Clearing Firm Deposit.....	25-58
§ 25:17.22	Indemnification.....	25-58
§ 25:17.23	Exclusive Services.....	25-58
§ 25:17.24	Proprietary Trading, Underwriting, Market Making and Specialist Activities.....	25-58
§ 25:17.25	Disciplinary Action, Regulatory Forms and Notices.....	25-59
§ 25:17.26	Use of Clearing Firm's Name.....	25-59
§ 25:17.27	Excess SIPC Coverage.....	25-59
§ 25:17.28	Termination.....	25-59
§ 25:17.29	Confidentiality and Non-Solicitation Provisions.....	25-60
§ 25:17.30	Arbitration.....	25-60
§ 25:17.31	Anti-Money Laundering, OFAC Regulation S-ID, and Regulation S-P Coordination Provisions.....	25-60
§ 25:17.32	Impact of FINRA Rule 1230 Regarding Registration of Operations Professionals.....	25-61
§ 25:17.33	Insurance Offered Through a Clearing Firm to the IBD.....	25-62
§ 25:18	Negative Consent Letters and Bulk Account Transfers.....	25-62
§ 25:19	Third-Party Liability of Clearing Firm and Introducing Brokers.....	25-64
§ 25:20	SEC Broker-Dealer Annual Reports, PCAOB Audit Requirements for Broker-Dealers, Form Custody, and Broker-Dealer Compliance Assertions.....	25-65
Appendix 25A	FINRA Rule 4311.....	App. 25A-1
Appendix 25B	SEC Rule 15c3-5.....	App. 25B-1
Appendix 25C	International Prime Brokerage Guidance—RN 07-58 (Nov. 2007).....	App. 25C-1
Appendix 25D	Checklist for Clearing Firm and Introducing Firm Due Diligence.....	App. 25D-1

PART IX: Other Requirements

**Chapter 26 Anti-Money Laundering Regulations
Applicable to Broker-Dealers**

Betty Santangelo

§ 26:1 Overview 26-2

§ 26:2 The Money Laundering Control Act of 1986 26-3

§ 26:3 The USA PATRIOT Act 26-5

 § 26:3.1 AML Programs 26-5

 § 26:3.2 Customer Identification and Verification 26-9

 [A] Customer Due Diligence 26-14

 § 26:3.3 Special Due Diligence Requirements for
 Financial Institutions Providing Private
 Banking or Correspondent Banking for
 Foreign Clients 26-15

 [A] Private Banking Accounts 26-17

 [B] Correspondent Accounts 26-17

 § 26:3.4 Prohibition Against Foreign Shell Banks, Foreign
 Bank Certification and Record Keeping 26-20

 § 26:3.5 Special Measures for Jurisdictions, Financial
 Institutions, or International Transactions or
 Accounts of Primary Money Laundering
 Concern 26-23

 § 26:3.6 Suspicious Activity Reports (SARs) 26-24

 § 26:3.7 Information Sharing 26-31

§ 26:4 Other BSA Recording and Record-Keeping
 Provisions 26-33

 § 26:4.1 Transactions Involving Currency Over
 \$10,000: CTR Reporting 26-34

 § 26:4.2 Transportation of Currency or Monetary
 Instruments Over \$10,000 Into or Outside the
 United States: CMIR Reporting 26-35

 § 26:4.3 FBAR Reporting 26-36

 § 26:4.4 Reporting of Purchases of Monetary
 Instruments Over \$3,000 26-37

 § 26:4.5 Funds Transfer Rules 26-37

 [A] The Joint Rule 26-37

 [B] The Travel Rule 26-39

§ 26:5 Office of Foreign Assets Control (OFAC) 26-40

Chapter 27 Privacy of Client Financial Information*Stephanie Nicolas & Elena Schwieger*

§ 27:1	Introduction.....	27-3
§ 27:2	The Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act.....	27-4
§ 27:3	Federal Privacy Regulations	27-5
§ 27:4	The Fair Credit Reporting Act.....	27-5
§ 27:4.1	Consumer Reports	27-5
§ 27:4.2	Consumer Reporting Agencies.....	27-6
§ 27:5	Other Applicable Laws.....	27-7
§ 27:5.1	State and Local Laws	27-7
§ 27:5.2	International Laws.....	27-10
§ 27:6	Complying with Regulation S-P	27-11
§ 27:6.1	Broker-Dealers Subject to Regulation S-P	27-12
§ 27:6.2	Customers and Consumers	27-14
[A]	Application of the Definition of “Consumer”	27-15
[B]	Application of the Definition of “Customer”	27-16
[C]	Examples of Customers and Consumers.....	27-16
§ 27:6.3	Nonpublic Personal Information	27-17
[A]	“Personally Identifiable Financial Information”	27-18
[B]	“List, Description, or Other Grouping of Consumers”	27-19
[C]	Does Not Include “Publicly Available” Information.....	27-20
[C][1]	Application to Information on the Internet.....	27-21
[C][2]	Information That Is Unlawfully Obtained	27-21
§ 27:7	Complying with Regulation S-P	27-21
§ 27:7.1	Disclosure Obligations.....	27-21
[A]	Information to Be Included in Privacy Notices.....	27-22
[A][1]	Clear and Conspicuous.....	27-23
[A][2]	Level of Detail Required.....	27-24
[A][3]	Written or Electronic Notice	27-25
[A][4]	Joint Notice by Two or More Financial Institutions	27-26
[A][5]	Simplified Notice	27-26
[B]	Timing of Notices.....	27-26
[B][1]	Initial Notice	27-26
[B][2]	Annual Notices.....	27-28
[B][3]	Revised Policy Notices	27-28
[C]	Reasonable Expectation of Delivery	27-28
[D]	Joint Account Holders and Householding	27-29

Table of Contents

§ 27:7.2	Disclosure of Nonpublic Personal Information and Consumer Report Information to Affiliates.....	27-30
[A]	FCRA Opt-Out for Affiliate Sharing.....	27-30
[B]	Sharing Exceptions Under the FCRA.....	27-30
[C]	2003 Amendments to the FCRA.....	27-31
[D]	State and Local Law Restrictions.....	27-33
§ 27:7.3	Disclosures of Nonpublic Personal Information to Nonaffiliates.....	27-34
[A]	Reasonable Means to Opt Out.....	27-34
[B]	Time to Opt Out.....	27-35
[C]	Effect of a Consumer’s Opt-Out Election.....	27-36
[D]	Joint Accounts.....	27-36
[E]	FCRA Considerations.....	27-37
[F]	State and Local Law Restrictions.....	27-37
§ 27:7.4	Model Privacy Form to Provide Safe Harbor for GLB Act Disclosures.....	27-38
[A]	Proposed Model Privacy Form.....	27-39
[B]	Adopted Final Model Privacy Form.....	27-40
§ 27:7.5	Exceptions to Notice and Opt-Out Under Regulation S-P.....	27-41
[A]	Service Providers and Joint Marketers.....	27-41
[B]	Processing and Servicing Transactions.....	27-42
[C]	At the Direction of the Consumer or for Other Limited Reasons.....	27-43
[D]	Proposed Exception for Limited Information Disclosure When Registered Representatives Change Firms.....	27-44
§ 27:7.6	Reuse and Redislosure by Third Parties.....	27-45
§ 27:7.7	Policies and Procedures to Safeguard Information.....	27-45
[A]	The Safeguard Rule.....	27-46
[B]	The Disposal Rule.....	27-46
[C]	Guidance from Other Regulators.....	27-47
[D]	Online Activities.....	27-50
[E]	Proposed Amendments to the Safeguard and Disposal Rules.....	27-51
[E][1]	Proposed Amendments to the Safeguards Rule.....	27-51
[E][1][a]	Proposed Objectives of the Information Security Program.....	27-52
[E][1][b]	Other Proposed Requirements for the Information Security Program.....	27-53
[E][1][c]	Procedures for Security Breach.....	27-53

[E][2]	Proposed Amendments to the Disposal Rule.....	27-55
[E][3]	Proposed Recordkeeping Requirements.....	27-57
[E][4]	Industry Responses to Proposed Amendments	27-57
§ 27:8	Penalties for Violations of Privacy Laws and Enforcement Actions	27-58
§ 27:8.1	Recent Enforcement Actions.....	27-58
§ 27:8.2	No Private Cause of Action	27-61
§ 27:9	Regulation S-AM	27-63
§ 27:9.1	Proper Use of Information Eligibility Information.....	27-64
§ 27:9.2	Notice and Opt-Out Requirement	27-64
§ 27:9.3	Scope and Contents of Opt-Out Notice.....	27-64
§ 27:9.4	Delivery of Opt-Out Notice	27-66
§ 27:9.5	Renewal of Opt-Out Elections	27-66

Chapter 28 Practical Implications Regarding the Safeguarding of Customer Information

Andrew C. Small, David E. Rosedahl & Keith Loveland

§ 28:1	Introduction.....	28-3
§ 28:2	SEC Regulation S-P Safeguards Rule.....	28-7
§ 28:2.1	Information Security Programs (ISPs).....	28-9
[A]	Generally	28-9
[B]	Internal and External Risk Assessment.....	28-10
[C]	Developing Safeguarding Policies	28-11
[D]	Additional ISP Safeguards.....	28-13
§ 28:2.2	Responding to Unauthorized Access or Use of Personal Information.....	28-14
§ 28:2.3	Disposal of Personal Information	28-14
§ 28:2.4	Record-Keeping	28-15
§ 28:2.5	Additional Exception to Notice and Opt-Out Requirements—Limited Information Disclosure When Personnel Leave Their Firms	28-15
§ 28:2.6	Status of Rule Making	28-17
§ 28:3	FINRA Guidance	28-17
§ 28:3.1	Registered Representatives Changing Firms: Regulatory Notice 07-36	28-17
§ 28:3.2	FINRA Rules: Information Encryption Requirements: FINRA Rule 8210	28-18
§ 28:3.3	FINRA Rules: Business Continuity Plan: FINRA Rule 4370	28-19
§ 28:4	Investigations and Enforcement	28-19

Table of Contents

§ 28:4.1	Improper Recruiting Practices.....	28-20
[A]	NEXT Financial Group, Inc.	28-20
[B]	Woodbury Financial Services, Inc.	28-22
§ 28:4.2	Unsecure Disposal of Client Records: J.P. Turner & Company, LLC	28-22
§ 28:4.3	Insufficient Antivirus Protection: Commonwealth Equity Services, LLP	28-23
§ 28:4.4	Fraudulent Use of Client information	28-23
[A]	Sale of Information: <i>SEC v. Mondschein & UNCI, Inc.</i>	28-23
[B]	Fraudulent Use of Information: Merriman Curhan Ford & Co.	28-24
[C]	Improper Sharing of Confidential Customer Information—Tomlinson	28-25
§ 28:4.5	Inadequate Server and Web Portal Security.....	28-26
[A]	No Written Supervisory Procedures—LPL Financial Corp.	28-26
[B]	Open Web Portal Access—D.A. Davidson & Co....	28-27
[C]	Weak Access Controls—Lincoln Financial Securities Inc.	28-27
[D]	Inadequate Firewall and Password Protection— Centaurus Financial	28-28
[E]	Failure to Encrypt Laptop—Sterne, Agee & Leach.....	28-28
§ 28:4.6	Supervisors/Executives Accountable— GunnAllen Financial	28-28
§ 28:4.7	Transmitting Information to Non-Affiliates— Jeffrey N. Lombardi.....	28-29
§ 28:4.8	Failure to Safeguard Hard Copy Records— Hernan Chassy, Jr.	28-29
§ 28:4.9	Failure to Update Written Supervisory Procedures—Patrick Walker	28-30
§ 28:5	Red Flags Rules—Identity Theft Prevention Programs (Reg S-ID).....	28-30
§ 28:6	States’ Efforts to Safeguard Customer Information	28-32
§ 28:6.1	Breach Notice Statutes.....	28-32
§ 28:6.2	Security Freeze Laws	28-33
§ 28:6.3	Social Security Number Protection Laws	28-33
§ 28:6.4	Disposal of Personal Information Laws	28-34
§ 28:6.5	Encryption Statutes/Rules	28-34
§ 28:7	Implementing Policies and Procedures	28-35
§ 28:8	Customer Self-Protection of Data.....	28-36
§ 28:9	Safeguarding Examinations.....	28-38
§ 28:10	Cybersecurity	28-39
§ 28:10.1	OCIE Cybersecurity Initiative.....	28-40

§ 28:10.2	Cybersecurity Frameworks	28-40
[A]	NIST Framework	28-40
[B]	ISO/IEC 27002 Standard	28-41
[C]	SANS 20 Critical Security Controls	28-42
§ 28:10.3	Cybersecurity Litigation Lessons	28-43
[A]	Eli Lilly	28-44
[B]	BJ's Wholesale.....	28-44
§ 28:10.4	Additional Cybersecurity Resources.....	28-45
§ 28:11	Conclusion	28-45

Chapter 29 Reserved

Chapter 30 Business Continuity Planning

Clifford E. Kirsch

§ 30:1	Introduction.....	30-1
§ 30:2	Text of FINRA Rule 4370	30-2
§ 30:3	Business Continuity Plan Requirements	30-4
§ 30:3.1	Coverage and Required Elements.....	30-4
[A]	Reliance on a Parent Corporation's Plan	30-5
[B]	Reliance on Others	30-6
[B][1]	Clearing Firm	30-6
§ 30:3.2	Approval, Updating, and Annual Review.....	30-6
§ 30:3.3	Customer Disclosure Requirements	30-7
[A]	Plan Modifications.....	30-7
§ 30:3.4	Emergency Contact Information.....	30-7
§ 30:4	Regulatory Guidance on BCP	30-8
§ 30:4.1	2013 SEC, CFTC, and FINRA BCP Best Practices Advisory	30-8
§ 30:4.2	BCP Targeted Exam Letter Following Hurricane Sandy	30-8
§ 30:4.3	FINRA BCP Questions and Answers.....	30-12

Chapter 31 Outsourcing by Financial Services Firms

Stuart D. Levi

§ 31:1	Overview.....	31-3
§ 31:1.1	Benefits of Outsourcing Financial Services	31-4
§ 31:1.2	Risks of Outsourcing Financial Services	31-4
§ 31:2	Drafting Considerations	31-5
§ 31:2.1	Compliance with the Law.....	31-5
§ 31:2.2	Compliance with Policies and Procedures	31-6
§ 31:2.3	Subcontracting	31-6
§ 31:2.4	Key Staff.....	31-6

Table of Contents

§ 31:2.5	Termination	31-7
§ 31:2.6	Security	31-7
§ 31:2.7	Indemnification	31-7
§ 31:2.8	Audits.....	31-8
§ 31:2.9	Data Protection.....	31-8
§ 31:3	U.S. Regulatory Framework.....	31-8
§ 31:3.1	Federal Reserve Board	31-9
[A]	Overview	31-9
[B]	Risk Mitigation in Financial Services Outsourcing.....	31-10
[B][1]	Identifying Challenges and Risks	31-11
[B][2]	Best Practices for Mitigating Risk.....	31-12
[C]	FRB Supervisory Letter: Outsourcing of Information and Transaction Processing	31-14
§ 31:3.2	Office of Comptroller of Currency.....	31-16
[A]	Overview	31-16
[B]	Foreign-Based Third-Party Service Providers.....	31-17
[C]	Risk Management for Banks.....	31-18
[D]	Standards for Safeguarding Customer Information.....	31-19
[E]	Country Risk	31-20
[F]	Third-Party Relationships	31-21
[F][1]	Categories of Risk.....	31-21
[F][2]	Risk Management.....	31-22
[F][3]	Oversight	31-23
§ 31:3.3	Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation	31-24
[A]	Overview	31-24
[B]	Foreign-Based Third-Party Service Providers	31-24
[B][1]	Categories of Risk.....	31-25
[B][2]	Risk Assessment.....	31-25
[C]	Offshoring of Data Services	31-27
[C][1]	Identifying Risks.....	31-27
[C][2]	Recommendations and Best Practices.....	31-29
[D]	Country Risk Management	31-32
[E]	Outsourcing Technology Products and Services	31-32
[E][1]	Effective Practices for Selecting a Service Provider.....	31-33
[E][2]	Tools to Manage Technology Providers' Performance Risk: Service Level Agreements.....	31-34
[E][3]	Techniques for Managing Multiple Service Providers	31-35
[F]	Compliance with Bank Service Company Act....	31-37

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

§ 31:3.4	Office of Thrift Supervision	31-38
[A]	Overview	31-38
[B]	Information Technology and Risk Controls.....	31-38
[C]	Third-Party Arrangements	31-40
[C][1]	Regulation and Examination Requirements	31-40
[C][2]	Management Responsibilities	31-41
[C][3]	OTS Supervision.....	31-43
[D]	Internal Controls and Outsourcing	31-43
§ 31:3.5	National Credit Union Administration	31-44
[A]	Overview	31-44
[B]	Due Diligence Over Third-Party Service Providers	31-45
§ 31:3.6	Federal Financial Institutions Examination Council	31-45
[A]	Overview	31-45
[B]	Evaluating a Financial Institution’s Risk Management Processes	31-46
[B][1]	Risk Management.....	31-46
[B][2]	Board and Management Responsibilities.....	31-46
[B][3]	Risk Assessment and Requirements	31-47
[B][4]	Service Provider Selection	31-47
[B][5]	Contract Issues.....	31-48
[B][6]	Ongoing Monitoring.....	31-51
[B][7]	Business Continuity Plans.....	31-51
[B][8]	Information Security/Safeguarding.....	31-52
[B][9]	Multiple Service Provider Relationships	31-52
[B][10]	Outsourcing to Foreign Service Providers	31-52
§ 31:3.7	Financial Industry Regulatory Authority.....	31-55
[A]	Overview	31-55
[B]	A Member’s Responsibilities Regarding Outsourcing	31-55
[B][1]	Accountability and Supervisory Responsibility.....	31-56
[B][2]	Prohibited Outsourcing Activity	31-57
§ 31:3.8	New York Stock Exchange	31-57
[A]	Overview	31-57
[B]	Proposed Rules Regarding Outsourcing	31-58
[B][1]	Prohibited Activities	31-58
[B][2]	Prior Written Notice	31-59
[B][3]	Due Diligence.....	31-59
[B][4]	Oversight	31-60
[B][5]	Disclosure.....	31-61
[B][6]	Renewals.....	31-61
§ 31:4	Foreign and International Regulation	31-61

Table of Contents

§ 31:4.1 EU's Markets in Financial Instruments
Directive 31-61
 [A] Overview 31-61
 [B] Applicability 31-62
 [C] Requirements 31-62
 [C][1] Level 1 Directive 31-62
 [C][2] Level 2 Directive 31-63
 [C][3] Obligations on Investment Firms 31-63
 [C][4] Obligations of Member States 31-65
 [C][5] Exceptions 31-65
 [C][6] Application to Existing Outsourcing
 Arrangements 31-65
§ 31:4.2 Joint Forum Outsourcing Principles 31-66
§ 31:4.3 IOSCO Outsourcing Principles 31-68

**Chapter 31A SEC and CFTC Whistleblower Rules and
Anti-Retaliation Protections**

*John H. Sturc, Jason C. Schwartz, Joshua D. Dick &
Thomas M. Johnson, Jr.*

§ 31A:1 Introduction 31A-3
§ 31A:2 Affected Entities 31A-4
§ 31A:3 Essential Elements of Whistleblower Award
 Eligibility 31A-4
 § 31A:3.1 Definition of a Whistleblower 31A-5
 § 31A:3.2 Voluntary Submission of Original
 Information 31A-5
 [A] Voluntary 31A-5
 [B] Original Information 31A-6
 [C] 120-Day Look Back Provisions 31A-8
 § 31A:3.3 Successful Enforcement Action 31A-8
 [A] Calculating Amount Recovered 31A-9
§ 31A:4 Exclusions from Award Eligibility 31A-10
 § 31A:4.1 Principals 31A-10
 § 31A:4.2 Attorneys 31A-10
 § 31A:4.3 Compliance Personnel 31A-11
 § 31A:4.4 Individuals Retained to Conduct
 Inquiry 31A-12
 § 31A:4.5 Accountants 31A-12
 § 31A:4.6 Other Exclusions 31A-12
§ 31A:5 Exceptions to Exclusion from
 Award Eligibility 31A-13
§ 31A:6 Factors Considered in Determining the
 Amount of an Award 31A-13

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

§ 31A:6.1	Factors That May Increase an Award.....	31A-14
[A]	Significance of Information	31A-14
[B]	Degree of Assistance Provided	31A-14
[C]	Programmatic Interest of SEC or CFTC	31A-15
[D]	Participation in Internal Compliance Programs.....	31A-16
§ 31A:6.2	Factors That May Decrease an Award.....	31A-16
[A]	Whistleblower Culpability	31A-16
[B]	Delay in Reporting Violation	31A-16
[C]	Interference with Internal Compliance Programs.....	31A-17
[D]	Potential Adverse Incentives	31A-17
§ 31A:7	Treatment of Culpable Individuals.....	31A-17
§ 31A:8	Whistleblower Confidentiality and Anonymity	31A-18
§ 31A:9	Whistleblower Protections: The Anti-Retaliation Provisions.....	31A-18
§ 31A:9.1	Relationship Between New Dodd-Frank and SOX Retaliation Claims	31A-20
§ 31A:9.2	SEC Authority to Enforce Anti-Retaliation Provisions	31A-21
§ 31A:9.3	Non-Waivability of Anti-Retaliation Protections.....	31A-21
§ 31A:9.4	Extraterritorial Application.....	31A-21
§ 31A:10	SEC Communications with Whistleblowers and Attorney-Client Privilege	31A-22
§ 31A:11	Confidentiality Agreements.....	31A-22
§ 31A:12	Arbitration and Alternative Dispute Resolution	31A-23
§ 31A:13	Practical Considerations for Responding to the Whistleblower Rules	31A-23
§ 31A:13.1	Culture of Compliance.....	31A-23
[A]	Promote Compliance	31A-25
[B]	Codes of Conduct and Training	31A-25
[C]	Mandatory Reporting of Potential Violations.....	31A-26
§ 31A:13.2	Internal Reporting Procedures	31A-26
[A]	Accessible Internal Reporting Systems	31A-26
[B]	Communicating Importance of Internal Reporting	31A-27
§ 31A:13.3	Human Resources.....	31A-27
[A]	Screening New Employees	31A-27
[B]	Employee Evaluations.....	31A-27
[C]	Manager Training	31A-28
[D]	Documenting Whistleblower Employment Actions.....	31A-28
[E]	Exit Forms and Separation Releases	31A-28

Table of Contents

§ 31A:13.4 Internal Investigations.....31A-28
 [A] Investigative Plans31A-29
 [B] Keeping Whistleblower Appraised.....31A-29
 [C] Employee Interviews.....31A-29
 [D] Use of Counsel31A-30
 [E] Policies Regarding Privileged and
 Confidential Information31A-30
§ 31A:14 Implications of the Whistleblower Rules for
 Enforcement Practice31A-31
 § 31A:14.1 Self-Reporting31A-31
 § 31A:14.2 Protect the Company’s Privileges.....31A-32
 § 31A:14.3 Assess Public Disclosure Issues.....31A-32

**Chapter 31B Enforcement of the Foreign Corrupt Practices
Act and Other Anti-Bribery Laws**

*William Michael, Jr., Laurence A. Urgenson,
Sean P. McDonnell, Matthew J. Alexander &
Colleen Snow*

§ 31B:1 Overview 31B-3
§ 31B:2 Legal Elements 31B-5
 § 31B:2.1 Anti-Bribery and Accounting Provisions..... 31B-5
 [A] Anti-Bribery Provisions..... 31B-5
 [B] Accounting Provisions 31B-5
 § 31B:2.2 Jurisdiction Pursuant to the FCPA 31B-6
 [A] Anti-Bribery 31B-6
 [A][1] Issuers..... 31B-6
 [A][2] Domestic Concerns 31B-7
 [A][3] Persons Other Than Issuers or Domestic
 Concerns..... 31B-7
 [B] Scope of the Term “Foreign Officials” 31B-8
 § 31B:2.3 Facilitation Payments 31B-12
 § 31B:2.4 Affirmative Defenses 31B-13
 § 31B:2.5 Statute of Limitations..... 31B-13
 § 31B:2.6 DOJ Opinion Process 31B-14
 § 31B:2.7 Penalties 31B-16
 § 31B:2.8 Consultants, Agents, and Other Third-Party
 Intermediaries: Managing the Risks of
 Liability for the Conduct of Others
 Under a Willful Blindness Theory..... 31B-17
§ 31B:3 Mergers & Acquisitions 31B-20
§ 31B:4 FCPA Enforcement Activity and Developments..... 31B-21
 § 31B:4.1 Whistleblower Rules Under the
 Dodd-Frank Act..... 31B-21

§ 31B:4.2	Review of Enforcement Actions	31B-22
[A]	Generally	31B-22
[B]	Some Significant Cases Brought by the DOJ and the SEC	31B-23
[B][1]	VimpelCom	31B-23
[B][2]	Alstom SA	31B-24
[B][3]	Avon Products Inc.	31B-25
[B][4]	Archer Daniels Midland	31B-26
[B][5]	Weatherford International.....	31B-27
[B][6]	Siemens AG.....	31B-28
[B][7]	BAE Systems PLC.....	31B-29
[B][8]	Diebold Inc.	31B-29
[B][9]	Marubeni Corporation.....	31B-30
[B][10]	Johnson & Johnson	31B-31
[B][11]	BizJet International Sales and Support Inc. ...	31B-33
[B][12]	The Gabon “Sting” Prosecutions	31B-34
[C]	SEC Enforcement Actions Taken Without the DOJ	31B-34
[C][1]	Eastern Europe.....	31B-35
[C][2]	Asia/South Asia	31B-35
[C][3]	South America	31B-38
[C][4]	Africa/Middle East	31B-38
§ 31B:4.3	Trends.....	31B-39
[A]	Individual Enforcement and the Yates Memo	31B-39
[B]	A Voluntary Disclosure Renaissance? DOJ’s Enforcement Plan and Pilot Program.....	31B-41
[C]	Global Enforcement and Cooperation Remain on the Rise as the UK Bribery Act Heats Up.....	31B-43
[D]	Unexpected Enforcers: Brazil and Operation Lava Jato	31B-45
[E]	The World Bank As an Anticorruption Agent	31B-46
[F]	Judicial Scrutiny of Deferred Prosecution Agreements	31B-46
[G]	Jurisdiction Over Foreign Nationals	31B-47
[H]	Control Person Liability.....	31B-49
[I]	Sovereign Wealth Funds and the Financial Services Industry.....	31B-50
§ 31B:5	Overview of FCPA Compliance Practice	31B-51
§ 31B:5.1	Generally	31B-51
§ 31B:5.2	Sources of Guidance	31B-52
§ 31B:6	Conclusion.....	31B-57

Table of Contents

Chapter 31C Financial Services Cybersecurity

*Edward R. McNicholas, Vivek K. Mohan,
Douglas F. McCormack, Frances Faircloth,
Grady Nye & Michaelene Hanley*

§ 31C:1 In General 31C-2
§ 31C:2 Financial Services 31C-6
 § 31C:2.1 Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act 31C-9
 § 31C:2.2 The Fair and Accurate Credit Transactions
 Act and Red Flags Rule 31C-13
 § 31C:2.3 SEC Regulation of Cybersecurity 31C-16
 § 31C:2.4 Federal Financial Institutions Examination
 Council 31C-22
 § 31C:2.5 Office of the Comptroller of the Currency 31C-23
 § 31C:2.6 Commodity Futures Trading Commission 31C-25
 § 31C:2.7 Financial Industry Regulatory Authority 31C-30
 § 31C:2.8 New York State Department of
 Financial Services 31C-34

**PART X: Compliance, Examinations, and
Enforcement**

Chapter 32 Broker-Dealer Compliance Programs

Clifford E. Kirsch & Issa J. Hanna

§ 32:1 Background 32-2
§ 32:2 FINRA Rule 3120—Supervisory Control System 32-3
 § 32:2.1 Establishing the Supervisory Control System 32-4
 [A] Activity Conducted by a Firm’s Producing
 Manager 32-4
 [A][1] Under Former Rule 3012 32-4
 [A][2] Under FINRA Rule 3110(b)(6) 32-5
 [B] Policies and Procedures—Customer
 Change of Address 32-6
 § 32:2.2 Maintaining and Testing the Supervisory
 Control System 32-6
 § 32:2.3 Additional Content Requirements Under
 FINRA Rule 3120(b) for Firms Reporting \$200
 Million or More in Gross Revenue 32-7
§ 32:3 Rule 3130—CCO Designation and CEO Annual
 Compliance Certification 32-8
 § 32:3.1 Designation of CCO 32-9
 § 32:3.2 Report Review and Presentation 32-9
 § 32:3.3 CEO Annual Compliance Certification 32-10
§ 32:4 Summary of Required Review Under the
 Compliance Program Rules 32-11

Chapter 32A Broker-Dealer Chief Compliance Officer Liability

Brian L. Rubin & Katherine L. Kelly

§ 32A:1	Introduction	32A-2
§ 32A:1.1	Overview.....	32A-2
§ 32A:1.2	The Relevant Rules.....	32A-2
§ 32A:1.3	Theories of Liability	32A-3
§ 32A:2	Direct Violations	32A-3
§ 32A:2.1	Conduct Related to the Role of the CCO.....	32A-3
[A]	Supervisory Systems and Written Supervisory Procedures.....	32A-4
[A][1]	Deficient WSPs	32A-4
[A][2]	Inadequately Tailored WSPs.....	32A-4
[A][3]	Failure to Follow WSPs.....	32A-5
[B]	Reporting Violations	32A-6
[C]	Responding to FINRA Rule 8210 Requests	32A-7
§ 32A:2.2	Other Conduct	32A-7
§ 32A:3	Aiding and Abetting and/or Causing a Violation	32A-8
§ 32A:4	Failure to Supervise.....	32A-10
§ 32A:4.1	Direct-Line Supervision.....	32A-10
§ 32A:4.2	Urban: Non-Direct Line Supervision.....	32A-11
§ 32A:4.3	Guidance Regarding Non-Direct Line Supervision	32A-14

Chapter 33 Record-Keeping

John R. Hewitt

§ 33:1	Introduction.....	33-2
§ 33:1.1	Legislative History	33-3
§ 33:1.2	Early Evolution of the Record-Keeping Rules	33-3
§ 33:2	Rule 17a-3: Records to Be Made by Certain Exchange Members, Brokers, and Dealers.....	33-6
§ 33:2.1	Overview	33-6
§ 33:2.2	Coverage	33-7
§ 33:2.3	Required Records.....	33-7
[A]	Operational Records.....	33-7
[B]	Personnel Records	33-12
[C]	Lost Securities and Fingerprinting	33-14
[D]	Broker-Dealer Systems	33-14
[E]	Client Account Records	33-16
[F]	Customer Complaints	33-17
[G]	Associated Person Compensation and Agreements	33-17

Table of Contents

[H]	Advertising Materials.....	33-18
[I]	Designated Persons to Explain Records; Record of Principals	33-18
§ 33:2.4	Exceptions to Rule 17a-3(a); Other Miscellaneous Provisions.....	33-18
§ 33:3	Rule 17a-4: Records to Be Preserved by Certain Exchange Members, Brokers, and Dealers.....	33-20
§ 33:3.1	Operational Records and Other Records Required Under Rule 17a-3.....	33-21
§ 33:3.2	Financial Records.....	33-23
§ 33:3.3	Corporate Records.....	33-24
§ 33:3.4	Reports and Manuals.....	33-24
§ 33:3.5	Electronic Record Retention.....	33-25
[A]	The Advent of Electronic Record Keeping—1970–1990	33-25
[B]	Electronic Storage Media—Release No. 32,609 (July 9, 1993)	33-26
[C]	The Use of Electronic Media—Release Nos. 33-7233 (October 1995) and 33-7288 (May 1996)	33-27
[D]	Electronic Storage Media—Release No. 38,245 (February 1997).....	33-28
[E]	Books and Records Requirements for Broker-Dealers—Exchange Act Release No. 44,992 (2001)	33-30
[F]	The Electronic Signatures in Global and National Commerce Act of 2000	33-31
[G]	The Commission Provides Guidance on Electronic Records Retention and Preservation— Release No. 47,806 (May 2003).....	33-33
[H]	Record-Keeping Compliance and Social Media	33-33
§ 33:3.6	Exceptions to Rule 17a-4; Other Miscellaneous Provisions.....	33-35
§ 33:3.7	Requirement to Make Records Available to the SEC.....	33-36
§ 33:3.8	Where Records Must Be Kept	33-37
§ 33:3.9	Email Record Retention	33-37
§ 33:4	Recent Enforcement Actions.....	33-37

Chapter 34 SEC and FINRA Inspections*Clifford E. Kirsch & Holly H. Smith*

§ 34:1	Overview.....	34-2
§ 34:2	SEC Examinations.....	34-3
§ 34:2.1	Authority to Conduct Examinations.....	34-3
§ 34:2.2	Types of Examinations.....	34-3
§ 34:3	Mechanics of an Inspection.....	34-4
§ 34:3.1	Selection.....	34-4
§ 34:3.2	Preparation.....	34-4
[A]	SEC Preparation.....	34-4
[B]	Preparation by the Firm.....	34-4
[C]	Role of the CCO.....	34-5
§ 34:3.3	The SEC's Request for Information.....	34-5
[A]	Generally.....	34-5
[B]	Scope of SEC's Authority to Request Documents.....	34-6
§ 34:3.4	Issues Related to Document Production.....	34-6
[A]	Generally.....	34-6
[B]	Production to the SEC Staff—Effect on Privilege.....	34-7
[C]	Return of Documents.....	34-8
[D]	Seeking Confidential Treatment.....	34-8
§ 34:3.5	SEC's Activity on the Premises.....	34-9
§ 34:3.6	Notification of Findings.....	34-10
§ 34:4	FINRA Examinations.....	34-11
§ 34:4.1	Generally.....	34-11
§ 34:4.2	Statutory Authority.....	34-11
[A]	Examination Authority Granted to Self-Regulatory Organizations.....	34-11
[B]	Allocation of Regulatory Responsibility Among SROs.....	34-12
[C]	Scope of FINRA Examination Authority.....	34-13
§ 34:4.3	Types of Examinations.....	34-14
[A]	Cycle Exams.....	34-14
[A][1]	Generally.....	34-14
[A][2]	Conduct of the Exam.....	34-16
[B]	Cause Exams.....	34-18
[C]	Branch Exams.....	34-19
[D]	Market Regulation Exams.....	34-19
[E]	Sweep Exams.....	34-20
[F]	New Member Exams.....	34-20
[G]	Letter Exams.....	34-21
[H]	Advertising Spot-Check Exams.....	34-21
[I]	Product-Based Exams.....	34-21
[J]	SEC Quality Exams.....	34-21

Table of Contents

§ 34:4.4	Rights and Responsibilities Vis-à-Vis Members and FINRA.....	34-22
[A]	FINRA Right to Information and Inspection	34-22
[B]	Duty to Comply.....	34-22
§ 34:5	FINRA Disciplinary Program.....	34-23
§ 34:5.1	Generally.....	34-23
§ 34:5.2	Disciplinary Program	34-24
[A]	Delegation of Responsibility to FINRA.....	34-24
[B]	Enforcement Department Investigation.....	34-25
[C]	Authorization of Proceedings	34-27
[D]	Hearings.....	34-27
[E]	Issuance and Review of Decisions	34-29
§ 34:5.3	Resolution of Disciplinary Proceedings.....	34-30
§ 34:5.4	Sanctions	34-30
§ 34:5.5	SEC Review.....	34-31
§ 34:5.6	Statutory Disqualifications	34-32
§ 34:5.7	Conclusion.....	34-32

Chapter 35 SEC and FINRA Enforcement

Richard D. Marshall & Sean E. Kreiger

§ 35:1	Introduction.....	35-3
§ 35:2	SEC Enforcement.....	35-4
§ 35:2.1	Introduction.....	35-4
§ 35:2.2	How the SEC Conducts an Investigation	35-5
[A]	Informal Inquiries.....	35-7
[B]	Formal Investigations	35-8
[B][1]	Rights of Witnesses During Formal Investigation	35-11
[B][1][a]	Right to Counsel.....	35-11
[B][1][b]	Right to Evidence Provided and Transcript of Testimony	35-12
[C]	Conclusion of the Investigation.....	35-12
[C][1]	The Wells Notice	35-12
[C][2]	Recommendation to the Commission.....	35-14
[C][3]	Settlements	35-14
§ 35:2.3	Outcomes of an Investigation.....	35-14
[A]	Injunctive Actions.....	35-15
[A][1]	Money Penalty Awards	35-16
[B]	Administrative Proceedings.....	35-18
[C]	Commission Review of Administrative Proceedings	35-19

[D]	Referrals to Other Law Enforcement Organizations.....	35-20
[E]	Coordinated Investigations and Actions with Department of Justice.....	35-20
§ 35:2.4	Consequences of an Enforcement Action	35-21
[A]	Rights Created by SEC Rules and Releases.....	35-23
[B]	Statutory Rights.....	35-24
[C]	Constitutional Rights	35-25
§ 35:3	FINRA Disciplinary Practice and Procedures	35-25
§ 35:3.1	The Scope of FINRA Enforcement Authority.....	35-25
§ 35:3.2	Sources of FINRA Disciplinary Authority.....	35-26
§ 35:3.3	Procedural Requirements	35-27
§ 35:3.4	FINRA Disciplinary Jurisdiction and Typical Grounds for Its Proceedings	35-28
[A]	Disciplinary Jurisdiction	35-28
[B]	Disciplinable Acts and Omissions	35-28
§ 35:3.5	FINRA Investigations.....	35-29
[A]	Pre-Investigation Stage.....	35-30
[B]	FINRA Investigation Procedures.....	35-30
[B][1]	In General.....	35-30
[B][2]	Simultaneous Investigations of the Same Matter	35-32
[B][3]	Confidentiality.....	35-32
[B][4]	Representation by Counsel	35-33
[B][5]	Duty to Cooperate	35-33
[B][6]	SEC and FINRA Incentives for Cooperation	35-35
[B][7]	Document Production	35-36
[B][8]	Privileged Documents	35-38
[B][9]	Witness Statements	35-38
[B][10]	Interviews and Testimony.....	35-39
[C]	Conclusion of the Investigation.....	35-39
§ 35:4	Resolving a Disciplinary Matter	35-40
§ 35:4.1	Informal Disciplinary Actions	35-40
§ 35:4.2	Minor Rule Violation Plans	35-40
§ 35:4.3	Filing the Equivalent of a “Wells Submission”	35-40
§ 35:4.4	Settlement Procedures.....	35-41
[A]	AWC Letter.....	35-42
[B]	Offer of Settlement	35-42
§ 35:4.5	Contested Hearings.....	35-44
[A]	The Complaint and Answer	35-44
[B]	Prehearing Procedures.....	35-46

Table of Contents

[C]	The Hearing.....	35-48
[D]	Post-Hearing Submissions	35-49
[E]	Prohibition of Ex Parte Contacts	35-49
[F]	Written Decision and Sanctions	35-49
§ 35:5	Sanctions	35-50
§ 35:5.1	In General.....	35-50
§ 35:5.2	Censure.....	35-50
§ 35:5.3	Monetary Sanctions	35-50
[A]	Fine.....	35-50
[B]	Disgorgement.....	35-51
[C]	Restitution	35-51
[D]	Costs.....	35-51
[E]	Failure to Pay Monetary Sanctions	35-51
§ 35:5.4	Suspension, Expulsion, Revocation, and Bar	35-52
§ 35:5.5	Undertakings	35-52
§ 35:6	Review of Actions	35-53
§ 35:6.1	National Adjudicatory Council Internal Review.....	35-53
§ 35:6.2	Discretionary Review by FINRA Board.....	35-54
§ 35:7	Special Procedures	35-55
§ 35:7.1	SEC Review of FINRA Decisions.....	35-55
§ 35:7.2	Judicial Review of SEC Decisions	35-58

Chapter 36 How to Handle SEC/SRO Investigations

Peter J. Anderson, Neil S. Lang & Brian L. Rubin

§ 36:1	Hypothetical	36-3
§ 36:2	Analysis	36-5
§ 36:2.1	Getting Started.....	36-5
[A]	Learning About Investigations	36-5
[A][1]	Contacting the Staff.....	36-5
[A][2]	Reviewing the SEC Enforcement Manual	36-7
[A][3]	Requesting the Formal Order.....	36-7
[A][4]	Reviewing Prior Examinations	36-8
[B]	Exploring the Facts	36-9
[B][1]	Gathering Documents	36-9
[B][2]	Interviewing Employees	36-10
[B][3]	Privilege/Work Product Concerns	36-11
[C]	When Is It Necessary to Disclose an Investigation?.....	36-13
[C][1]	Disclosure Obligations.....	36-13
[C][1][a]	SEC Reporting Obligations.....	36-13
[C][1][b]	Other Disclosure Obligations.....	36-15
[C][2]	Voluntary Disclosure	36-15

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

§ 36:2.2	Reacting to the Staff’s Requests.....	36-16
[A]	Sanctions for Non-Compliance	36-16
[B]	Obligation to Respond Truthfully, Completely and Timely	36-19
[C]	Communicating with the Staff Regarding the Requests.....	36-20
[C][1]	Objecting to the Requests.....	36-20
[C][2]	Negotiating Production Deadlines	36-23
[D]	Earning Credit Through Cooperation.....	36-25
[D][1]	Earning Cooperation Credit from the SEC.....	36-25
[D][1][a]	Seaboard Report—A Blueprint for Cooperation	36-25
[D][1][b]	SEC Enforcement Manual.....	36-29
[D][1][c]	Examples of “Credit” from the SEC.....	36-31
[D][2]	Earning Cooperation Credit from FINRA.....	36-37
[D][2][a]	FINRA Regulatory Notice 08-70	36-37
[D][2][b]	FINRA Sanction Guidelines.....	36-39
[D][2][c]	Examples of “Credit” from FINRA	36-40
[D][3]	Determining the Extent of Cooperation	36-42
§ 36:2.3	Document Production Issues.....	36-44
[A]	Understanding the Stakes.....	36-45
[B]	Developing and Implementing a Plan to Identify and Produce Responsive Documents.....	36-45
[B][1]	Preserving Responsive Documents	36-45
[B][2]	Identifying Responsive Documents.....	36-47
[B][3]	The Peculiar Challenge of Electronic Communications	36-48
[B][3][a]	Reviewing Documents and Preparing Documents for Production.....	36-51
[B][3][a][i]	Legal Limitations on Document Discovery	36-51
[B][3][a][ii]	Producing Responsive Documents.....	36-53
[B][3][a][iii]	Requesting Confidential Treatment	36-54
§ 36:2.4	Testimony	36-57
[A]	The Initial Meeting and Document Collection	36-57
[B]	Attorney/Witness Preparation	36-58
[C]	Counsel’s Role During Testimony	36-65
§ 36:2.5	The Wells Process	36-68
[A]	When to Make a Wells Submission.....	36-71
[B]	When Not to Make a Wells Submission.....	36-73
[C]	Purpose of Wells Submissions	36-73
[D]	Implications for Other Actions.....	36-74
§ 36:2.6	Disclosure Obligations As a Result of a Regulatory Investigation	36-76

Table of Contents

[A] Broker-Dealer Disclosure Obligations 36-76
[B] Public Company Disclosure Obligations 36-76
[C] Issuer Disclosure Obligations 36-78
[D] Registered Person Disclosure Obligations 36-79
§ 36:2.7 Settlement Considerations..... 36-79
Appendix 36A Privilege Log App. 36A-1
Appendix 36B FINRA Clawback Agreement Template.... App. 36B-1
Appendix 36C FOIA Letter App. 36C-1
Appendix 36D Conflicts Letter..... App. 36D-1
Appendix 36E Wells Submission Outline..... App. 36E-1

**Chapter 37 State Broker-Dealer Record-Keeping,
Examinations and Enforcement**

Jeffrey O. Himstreet

§ 37:1 Introduction..... 37-2
§ 37:2 State Record-Keeping Requirements 37-2
 § 37:2.1 Background Leading to Uniform Federal and
 State Record-Keeping Requirements..... 37-2
 § 37:2.2 The Uniform Record-Keeping Standard—
 Amendments to Securities Exchange Act
 Rules 17a-3 and 17a-4 37-5
§ 37:3 The State Broker-Dealer Examination Program..... 37-6
 § 37:3.1 Exam Focus..... 37-7
 § 37:3.2 Top Compliance Deficiencies and
 Recommended Best Practices—the NASAA
 Broker-Dealer Coordinated Exams 37-8
Figure 37-1 Number of Deficiencies (and Percentage) 37-9
 § 37:3.3 What Happens If a Problem Is Discovered? 37-12
§ 37:4 State Enforcement Authority Over
 Broker-Dealers and Agents 37-12
 § 37:4.1 Broker-Dealers Subject to State
 Enforcement Authority 37-13
 § 37:4.2 NASAA Model Rule to Exempt
 Certain Mergers and Acquisition Brokers
 from State Registration and Regulation 37-13
 § 37:4.3 Grounds for Initiating Enforcement Actions 37-14
 § 37:4.4 Principal Considerations for Regulatory
 Actions..... 37-15
 § 37:4.5 General Remedies Available..... 37-18
Appendix 37A NASAA Statement of Policy App. 37A-1

**Chapter 37A Collateral Consequences for Broker-Dealers
and Associated Persons**

Christopher M. Salter

§ 37A:1	Collateral Consequences Defined	37A-2
§ 37A:2	When to Conduct a Collateral Consequences Review	37A-4
§ 37A:2.1	Settlements or Other Adverse Actions	37A-4
§ 37A:2.2	Transactions, Significant Investments, or Joint Ventures Involving a Broker-Dealer	37A-4
§ 37A:2.3	Dual Registrants	37A-5
§ 37A:3	Collateral Consequences, Remediation and Reporting Obligations	37A-5
§ 37A:3.1	Automatic Disqualifications	37A-5
[A]	“Statutory Disqualification” Under Section 3(a)(39) of the Exchange Act.....	37A-6
[A][1]	Impact of “Statutory Disqualification”	37A-8
[A][2]	Continuance Applications	37A-9
[B]	Disqualification Under Section 9(a) of the Investment Company Act.....	37A-10
[B][1]	Impact of Section 9(a) Disqualification	37A-10
[B][2]	Section 9(c) Exemption Applications	37A-11
[C]	Disqualification from Securities Registration Exemptions	37A-11
[C][1]	Regulation A Exemptions	37A-12
[C][2]	Regulation D Rule 505 Exemption	37A-13
[C][3]	Regulation D Rule 506 Exemption	37A-13
[C][4]	Regulation E Exemptions.....	37A-16
[C][5]	Applying for Relief and/or Waivers.....	37A-17
[D]	Eligibility for Safe Harbors for Forward-Looking Statements	37A-19
[D][1]	Section 21E of the Exchange Act and Section 27A of the Securities Act	37A-19
[D][2]	Applying for Waivers.....	37A-20
[E]	Eligibility for Streamlined Offering Process	37A-21
[E][1]	Rule 405 of the Securities Act	37A-21
[E][2]	Applying for Waivers.....	37A-22
[F]	Receipt of Investment Adviser Solicitation Fees Under Investment Advisers Act Rule 206(4)-3	37A-23
§ 37A:3.2	Permissive Action by the SEC	37A-25
§ 37A:3.3	Collateral Consequences and State Regulatory Regimes	37A-28
§ 37A:3.4	Collateral Consequences and Regulated Affiliates	37A-28

Table of Contents

§ 37A:3.5 Association with a Registered Security-Based Swap Dealer or Major Security-Based Swap Participant37A-30

§ 37A:4 Reporting and Notification Requirements.....37A-31

§ 37A:4.1 Form BD.....37A-31

§ 37A:4.2 Forms U4 and U537A-32

§ 37A:4.3 FINRA Rule 453037A-32

§ 37A:4.4 Schedule 13D Filing37A-33

§ 37A:4.5 Form N1-A37A-33

§ 37A:4.6 Form ADV37A-34

§ 37A:4.7 Form SBSE-BD37A-34

§ 37A:4.8 Forms 7-R and 8-R.....37A-34

PART XI: Regulatory Reporting Requirements

Chapter 37B Regulatory Reporting Requirements

Seth T. Taube & Terence Rozier-Byrd

§ 37B:1 Introduction and Brief Overview of the FINRA Rulebook 37B-2

§ 37B:2 Forms U4 and U5..... 37B-3

§ 37B:2.1 Mechanics of Filing 37B-5

§ 37B:2.2 Customer Complaints 37B-6

[A] Defined Terms 37B-7

[A][1] Reporting of Customer Complaints on Form U5 37B-9

[B] Customer Complaints Involving \$5,000 or More..... 37B-10

[C] Settlements of Customer Complaints 37B-11

[D] Oral Complaints..... 37B-12

[E] Forgery, Theft, Misappropriation or Conversion 37B-12

[F] Withdrawn Complaints 37B-13

§ 37B:2.3 Arbitration/Civil Litigation Disclosure 37B-13

[A] Awards and Decisions 37B-15

[B] Withdrawn Claims and Settlements..... 37B-15

[C] Expunging of Customer Dispute Information 37B-16

§ 37B:2.4 Criminal Disclosure 37B-17

[A] What Is Required to Be Reported with Regard to Criminal Disclosure? 37B-19

[B] What Is Not Required to Be Reported with Regard to Criminal Disclosure? 37B-19

§ 37B:2.5	Regulatory Action and Investigation Disclosure.....	37B-20
§ 37B:2.6	Form U4: Civil Judicial Disclosure	37B-23
§ 37B:2.7	Termination Disclosure	37B-23
§ 37B:2.8	Financial Disclosure	37B-24
§ 37B:2.9	Form U5: Internal Review Disclosure	37B-25
§ 37B:2.10	Deficiencies in Filing.....	37B-25
§ 37B:2.11	Signature Requirements.....	37B-26
§ 37B:2.12	Privilege for Potentially Defamatory Employer Statements in Form U5.....	37B-27
§ 37B:3	Member SRO Regulatory Filings Under FINRA Rule 4530	37B-27
§ 37B:3.1	Reporting of Rule Violations.....	37B-29
	[A] Findings by External Bodies.....	37B-29
	[B] Internal Conclusions	37B-30
§ 37B:3.2	Reporting Customer Complaints.....	37B-31
§ 37B:3.3	Reporting of Regulatory Actions	37B-33
§ 37B:3.4	Reporting of Criminal Actions	37B-33
§ 37B:3.5	Reporting of Litigation, Arbitration, and Certain Claims for Damages.....	37B-34
§ 37B:3.6	Reporting of Internal Disciplinary Action by the Member Firm	37B-35
§ 37B:3.7	Failure to Timely File Disclosures.....	37B-36
§ 37B:4	Conclusion	37B-36
Appendix 37B-A	Form U4: Uniform Applications for Securities Industry Registration or Transfer	App. 37B-A-1
Appendix 37B-B	Form U5: Uniform Termination Notice for Securities Industry Regulation	App. 37B-B-1
Appendix 37B-C	NASD Guidance on Forms U4 and U5	App. 37B-C-1
Appendix 37B-D	Problem and Product Codes for Reporting Rule 351(d) Complaints....	App. 37B-D-1

**Chapter 37C SEC Reporting Requirements Under Section 13
of the Exchange Act**

Kevin J. Campion & Katie Klaben

§ 37C:1	Introduction	37C-2
§ 37C:2	Section 13(d)—Beneficial Ownership Reporting Requirements	37C-3
§ 37C:2.1	Overview of Beneficial Ownership Reporting Pursuant to Section 13(d).....	37C-3

Table of Contents

[A]	Equity Securities	37C-3
[B]	Definition of “Beneficial Owner”	37C-4
[C]	Aggregation and Disaggregation of Beneficial Ownership	37C-5
[C][1]	Parent-Subsidiary	37C-5
[C][2]	Broker-Customer.....	37C-6
[D]	Calculation of Beneficial Ownership	37C-7
[E]	Group Status.....	37C-7
§ 37C:2.2	Section 13(d) Reporting Obligations.....	37C-9
[A]	Schedule 13D.....	37C-10
[A][1]	Overview.....	37C-10
[A][2]	Filing Deadlines.....	37C-10
[B]	Schedule 13G.....	37C-12
[B][1]	Overview.....	37C-12
[B][2]	Qualified Institutional Investors.....	37C-13
[B][2][a]	Overview	37C-13
[B][2][b]	Filing Deadlines	37C-14
[B][2][c]	Loss of Eligibility to File on Schedule 13G	37C-14
[B][3]	Passive Investors That Own Less Than 20% of the Security.....	37C-15
[B][3][a]	Overview	37C-15
[B][3][b]	Filing Deadlines	37C-15
[B][3][c]	Loss of Eligibility to File on Schedule 13G	37C-15
[B][4]	Exempt Investors	37C-16
[B][4][a]	Overview	37C-16
[B][4][b]	Filing Deadlines	37C-16
[B][4][c]	Loss of Eligibility to File on Schedule 13G	37C-17
[C]	Control Purpose or Effect	37C-17
§ 37C:3	Section 13(f)—Reports by Institutional Investment Managers.....	37C-20
§ 37C:3.1	Overview of Section 13(f) Reporting Requirements.....	37C-20
§ 37C:3.2	Institutional Investment Managers	37C-20
§ 37C:3.3	Section 13(f) Securities	37C-21
§ 37C:3.4	Possession of Investment Discretion.....	37C-21
§ 37C:3.5	Filing Deadlines.....	37C-22
§ 37C:4	Section 13(h)—Large Trader Reporting	37C-23
§ 37C:4.1	Overview of Section 13(f) Reporting Requirements.....	37C-23

§ 37C:4.2	Large Traders	37C-24
[A]	Focus on Parent/Control Entities	37C-24
[B]	Identifying Activity Level	37C-26
[C]	Voluntary Registration	37C-27
§ 37C:4.3	Form 13H	37C-27
[A]	Overview	37C-27
[B]	Form 13H Filing Types	37C-27
[C]	What Information Is Required on Form 13H?	37C-28
§ 37C:4.4	What Are the Requirements for Broker-Dealers?	37C-30
[A]	Record-Keeping Requirements	37C-30
[B]	Reporting Requirements	37C-30
[C]	Monitoring Requirements	37C-31
§ 37C:4.5	Confidentiality	37C-32

Chapter 37D Broker-Dealer Treasury and Related Reporting Requirements

Matthew B. Comstock & Andrew D. Beresin

§ 37D:1	Introduction	37D-3
§ 37D:2	TIC Forms	37D-5
§ 37D:2.1	Form SLT	37D-5
[A]	Reporting Entities	37D-5
[B]	Reporting Threshold and Types of Instruments Reported	37D-6
[C]	Exclusions	37D-7
[C][1]	Direct Investment	37D-7
[D]	Custodians	37D-7
[E]	Disclosures	37D-8
[F]	Examples	37D-9
[F][1]	Example 1	37D-9
[F][2]	Example 2	37D-9
[F][3]	Example 3	37D-9
[F][4]	Example 4	37D-10
[F][5]	Example 5	37D-10
§ 37D:2.2	Form S	37D-10
[A]	Reporting Entities	37D-10
[B]	Reporting Threshold and Types of Instruments Reported	37D-10
[C]	Broker-Dealer Reporting Responsibilities	37D-11
[D]	Exclusions	37D-13
[D][1]	Direct Investment	37D-13
[D][2]	Instruments	37D-13

Table of Contents

	[E]	Disclosures	37D-13
	[F]	Example	37D-14
§ 37D:2.3		Form B Series	37D-14
	[A]	Form BC	37D-14
	[B]	Form BL-1	37D-15
	[B][1]	Examples	37D-16
	[B][2]	Specific Exclusions	37D-16
	[C]	Form BL-2	37D-17
	[C][1]	Specific Exclusions	37D-18
	[D]	Form BQ-1	37D-18
	[D][1]	Reportable Claims	37D-18
	[D][2]	Specific Exclusions	37D-18
	[E]	Form BQ-2	37D-19
	[F]	Form BQ-3	37D-19
§ 37D:2.4		Form D	37D-20
	[A]	Exclusions	37D-21
	[B]	Disclosures	37D-22
	[C]	Example	37D-23
§ 37D:2.5		Forms SHL and SHLA	37D-23
	[A]	Form SHL	37D-23
	[A][1]	Reporting Entities	37D-24
	[A][2]	Reporting Threshold and Types of Instruments Reported	37D-25
	[A][3]	Exclusions	37D-25
	[B]	Form SHLA	37D-26
§ 37D:2.6		Form SHC and SHCA	37D-27
	[A]	Form SHC	37D-27
	[A][1]	Reporting Entities	37D-27
	[A][2]	Reporting Thresholds and Types of Instruments Reported	37D-27
	[A][3]	Exclusions	37D-28
	[A][3][a]	Direct Investment	37D-28
	[A][3][b]	Instruments	37D-28
	[A][3][c]	Disclosures	37D-28
	[B]	Form SHCA	37D-29
§ 37D:3		Treasury Foreign Currency Forms	37D-30
	§ 37D:3.1	Form FC-1	37D-30
	§ 37D:3.2	Form FC-2	37D-31
	§ 37D:3.3	Form FC-3	37D-32
§ 37D:4		BEA Forms	37D-32
	§ 37D:4.1	U.S.-International Financial Services Transactions	37D-33
	[A]	Form BE-185	37D-33
	[B]	Form BE-180	37D-34

§ 37D:4.2	U.S. Direct Investment Abroad	37D-35
[A]	Form BE-577.....	37D-35
[B]	Form BE-11.....	37D-36
[B][1]	BE-11 Forms	37D-36
[B][1][a]	BE-11A Form.....	37D-36
[B][1][b]	BE-11B Form.....	37D-37
[B][1][c]	BE-11C Form	37D-37
[B][1][d]	BE-11D Form	37D-37
[B][1][e]	BE-11E Form.....	37D-38
[B][1][f]	BE-11 Claim for Not Filing.....	37D-38
[C]	Form BE-10.....	37D-38
§ 37D:4.3	Foreign Direct Investment in the United States.....	37D-39
[A]	Form BE-605.....	37D-39
[B]	Form BE-15.....	37D-40
[B][1]	BE-15 Forms	37D-41
[B][1][a]	BE-15A	37D-41
[B][1][b]	BE-15B	37D-41
[B][1][c]	BE-15 (EZ).....	37D-41
[B][1][d]	BE-15 Claim for Exemption.....	37D-42
[C]	Form BE-12.....	37D-42
[C][1]	BE-12 Forms	37D-42
[C][1][a]	BE-12A	37D-42
[C][1][b]	BE-12B	37D-42
[C][1][c]	BE-12C.....	37D-43
[C][1][d]	BE-12 Claim for Not Filing.....	37D-43

VOLUME 3

Table of Chapters	vii
--------------------------------	-----

PART XII: The Municipal Marketplace

Chapter 37E Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board

Ernesto A. Lanza

§ 37E:1	Introduction	37E-2
§ 37E:2	Creation and History	37E-4
§ 37E:3	Regulatory Authority, Mandate and Limits.....	37E-5
§ 37E:3.1	General Authority.....	37E-5
[A]	Municipal Broker-Dealer Rules	37E-6
[A][1]	Municipal Securities	37E-6

Table of Contents

	[A][2] Municipal Broker-Dealers	37E-7
	[A][3] Effected Transactions	37E-10
	[B] Municipal Advisor Rules.....	37E-11
	[B][1] Recipients of Municipal Advisor Services	37E-12
	[B][1][a] Municipal Entities.....	37E-12
	[B][1][b] Obligated Persons.....	37E-13
	[B][2] Types of Municipal Advisor Services.....	37E-14
	[B][2][a] Issuance of Municipal Securities.....	37E-14
	[B][2][b] Municipal Financial Products	37E-14
	[B][2][c] Solicitations	37E-15
	[B][3] Providers of Municipal Advisor Services.....	37E-17
	[B][3][a] Municipal Advisors	37E-17
	[B][3][b] Municipal Broker-Dealers.....	37E-17
§ 37E:3.2	Mandated Rulemaking.....	37E-18
[A]	Principles-Based Municipal Broker-Dealer/ Municipal Advisor Rules.....	37E-19
[B]	Fiduciary-Based Municipal Advisor Rules	37E-21
§ 37E:3.3	Multi-Regulator Information Systems	37E-21
§ 37E:4	Structure and Operations.....	37E-23
§ 37E:4.1	Board of Directors	37E-23
§ 37E:4.2	Programs and Departments.....	37E-25
§ 37E:5	Rulemaking Process	37E-26
§ 37E:5.1	Rule Development Process	37E-27
[A]	Issue Identification	37E-27
[B]	Marketplace Input.....	37E-27
[C]	Board Deliberation and Disposition	37E-28
§ 37E:5.2	Rule Filing Process.....	37E-28
[A]	SEC Filing.....	37E-29
[B]	<i>Federal Register</i> Notice	37E-29
[C]	MSRB-SEC Consideration of Comments and Potential Modifications to Proposal.....	37E-29
[D]	SEC Approval or Disapproval	37E-30
[E]	Immediately Effective Rule Filings.....	37E-31
§ 37E:6	Structure of MSRB Rule Book.....	37E-32
§ 37E:7	Economic Analysis.....	37E-33
§ 37E:8	Enforcement and Compliance Examinations Relating to MSRB Rules	37E-34
§ 37E:9	MSRB Information Systems.....	37E-36

Chapter 38 Designing a Political Law Compliance Program for Broker-Dealers and Advisers

Steven S. Lucas

§ 38:1	Introduction to Political Law Compliance.....	38-2
§ 38:1.1	Political Law and Why Broker-Dealers Should Care	38-2
§ 38:1.2	Political Law and Its Implications for Broker-Dealers.....	38-4
§ 38:2	Lobby Laws and How They May Apply to Broker-Dealers and Advisers	38-5
§ 38:2.1	Is Your Employee a Lobbyist Under the Law?	38-5
§ 38:3	Gift and Ethics Laws and How They May Apply to Broker-Dealers and Advisers	38-6
§ 38:3.1	Be Careful When Providing Anything of Value to a Public Official	38-6
§ 38:3.2	Ethics Regulations Also Include Various Conflict of Interest Rules	38-6
§ 38:4	Campaign Laws and How They May Apply to Broker-Dealers and Advisers	38-7
§ 38:4.1	Campaign Finance: No Two Laws Are the Same	38-7
§ 38:4.2	Monitor Employee Reimbursement Requests	38-8
§ 38:5	The Special Case of “Pay-To-Play”	38-8
§ 38:5.1	Who Do Pay-to-Play Laws Affect?.....	38-9
§ 38:5.2	Where Do Pay-to-Play Laws Exist?	38-9
§ 38:5.3	Why Do Pay-to-Play Laws Exist?	38-10
§ 38:5.4	Types of Pay-to-Play Rules	38-10
§ 38:5.5	Scope of Pay-to-Play Laws.....	38-11
§ 38:6	Developing a Political Law Compliance Program: Tips and Recommendations	38-12
§ 38:6.1	Adopt a Company-Wide Political Law Compliance Policy	38-12
§ 38:6.2	Identifying the Stakeholders	38-12
§ 38:6.3	Creating Systems for Compliance	38-13
§ 38:6.4	Education and Training.....	38-13
§ 38:6.5	Designate Internal Management and Responsibility.....	38-13

Chapter 39 Broker-Dealer Regulation of Municipal Activity

Robert A. Fippinger

§ 39:1 Municipal Securities Broker-Dealers 39-6

 § 39:1.1 What Is the Reach of the Broker-Dealer
 Definition? 39-6

 § 39:1.2 The Finder Exemption and Its Limitations;
 Placement Agents 39-10

 § 39:1.3 Municipal Financial Advisors; Revocation of
 the Dominion Resources No-Action Letter 39-12

 § 39:1.4 The Bank Exemptions and Their Limitations 39-15

 [A] Municipal Securities Dealers 39-15

 [B] Municipal Securities Brokers 39-18

 [C] The Term “Exempted Securities” As It Applies
 to Broker-Dealer Registration Requirements 39-19

 [D] Municipal Securities “Push Out” Rules;
 Bank Private Placements 39-21

 § 39:1.5 The Analysis of Bank Loans to Municipalities
 and Bank Direct Purchases of Municipal
 Securities 39-25

 [A] Commercial Loan or Investment Security 39-26

 [A][1] Public Finance Examples 39-26

 [A][2] The *Reves* Case: Promissory Notes and
 Securities 39-27

 [A][3] Loan Participations 39-31

 [B] Is the Bank a Dealer? 39-32

 [B][1] The General Definition 39-32

 [B][2] Bank Exceptions 39-33

 [C] Is the Bank a Broker? 39-35

 [C][1] Placing Municipal Securities with a
 Nonaffiliate 39-35

 [C][2] Placing Municipal Securities with an
 Affiliate Broker-Dealer 39-37

 § 39:1.6 Intermediaries in Municipal Securities Lease
 Purchase Transactions 39-38

 § 39:1.7 Electronic Trading Platforms 39-42

 § 39:1.8 Can a State or Political Subdivision Issuer, or
 Its Officials and Employees, Be Inadvertent
 Broker-Dealers? 39-42

§ 39:2 The Regulatory Scheme for Municipal Securities
 Broker-Dealers 39-46

 § 39:2.1 What Is the Basic Broker-Dealer
 Obligation to Investors? 39-46

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

[A]	Special Relationships That Lead to a Fiduciary Duty	39-49
[B]	Principal-to-Principal Transactions in Municipal Securities	39-52
[C]	Conceptual Harmonization of Standard of Conduct; Broker-Dealers, Investment Advisers, and Municipal Advisors	39-53
[C][1]	SEC Assumptions for a Uniform Broker-Dealer and Investment Adviser Fiduciary Duty Rule.....	39-54
[C][2]	Fiduciary Duty: Duty of Loyalty and Duty of Care.....	39-56
§ 39:2.2	Obligations of Broker-Dealers to Persons Other Than Investors	39-57
§ 39:2.3	The Beginning of Municipal Broker-Dealer Regulation: 1975 Amendments to the 1934 Act.....	39-58
§ 39:2.4	Self-Regulation in the Over-the-Counter Markets.....	39-62
[A]	FINRA.....	39-64
[B]	MSRB.....	39-65
[C]	Dodd-Frank Act Expansion of MSRB Jurisdiction	39-68
[D]	Clearing Agencies	39-69
§ 39:2.5	The Self-Regulatory Concept: Coordinating MSRB and SEC Jurisdiction	39-70
[A]	Rules of General SEC Jurisdiction	39-73
[B]	Rules of Overlapping Jurisdiction	39-74
[B][1]	Recordkeeping Rules	39-74
[B][2]	Churning	39-79
[B][3]	Disclosure of Material Information	39-80
[B][4]	Suitable Recommendations.....	39-83
[C]	Distinguishing Statutory Limitations on MSRB and SEC Rules That Directly or Indirectly Affect Issuers	39-85
§ 39:3	Registration and Qualification Rules	39-93
§ 39:3.1	Registration of Municipal Broker-Dealer Firms with the SEC	39-93
§ 39:3.2	Rule G-1, Broker-Dealer Registration Requirements for Bank Dealers	39-96
§ 39:3.3	Registration of Brokers, Dealers, and Municipal Securities Dealers with the MSRB	39-103
[A]	Consolidated Registration on Form A-12; Fees	39-103
[B]	Initial and Annual Fees	39-104
[C]	Dealer Transaction Fees.....	39-104

Table of Contents

	[D] Municipal Securities Activities and Municipal Advisory Activities	39-105
	[E] Key MSRB Jurisdictional Definitions.....	39-106
	[E][1] Broker, Dealer, Municipal Securities Dealer, and Municipal Advisor	39-106
	[E][2] Rule D-8, Bank Dealer.....	39-106
	[E][3] Rule D-11, Associated Person.....	39-106
	[E][4] Rule D-12, Municipal Fund Security.....	39-108
§ 39:3.4	Field Examinations of Broker-Dealers and Banks	39-110
	[A] FINRA Priorities Letter.....	39-112
	[B] MSRB Compliance Advisory.....	39-114
§ 39:3.5	Rule G-2 and Rule G-3, Professional Qualifications.....	39-114
	[A] Municipal Securities Representative, Series 52, Series 7 and Series 6 Exams.....	39-115
	[B] Municipal Securities Principal, Series 53 and Series 51 Exams.....	39-118
	[C] Municipal Securities Sales Principal, Series 9/10 Exams.....	39-119
§ 39:3.6	Rule G-3, Continuing Education	39-120
§ 39:3.7	Rule G-4, Statutory Disqualification	39-121
§ 39:4	Primary Market Rules Related to Manipulation and Fraudulent Pricing.....	39-122
§ 39:4.1	Price Manipulation During a Distribution	39-122
§ 39:4.2	Bona Fide Public Offering at the Initial Offering Price	39-126
	[A] FINRA Rule 5130	39-126
	[B] Misconduct Associated with a Failure to Make a Bona Fide Public Offering	39-128
	[C] Public Finance Practices.....	39-130
	[C][1] The Bond Purchase Agreement	39-130
	[C][2] The Agreement Among Underwriters	39-131
§ 39:4.3	<i>SEC v. Edward D. Jones & Co.</i>	39-132
§ 39:4.4	The Use of Spread in Undersubscribed Deals....	39-134
§ 39:4.5	Fixed-Price Corporate Offerings and the Papilsky Rules	39-142
§ 39:4.6	Stabilization.....	39-144
§ 39:4.7	Market Making.....	39-149
§ 39:4.8	Application of Antitrust Rules	39-157
	[A] Rules of the Self-Regulatory Organizations.....	39-157
	[B] Broker-Dealer Conduct	39-162
§ 39:5	MSRB Syndicate and Uniform Practice Rules	39-164
§ 39:5.1	Rule G-11, Primary Offerings	39-164

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

[A]	The Basics of Syndicate Practices	39-164
[B]	Priority Provisions.....	39-168
[B][1]	Priorities Based on Syndicate Compensation	39-168
[B][2]	Priorities of Customer and Retail Orders	39-171
[C]	Retail Order Period	39-172
[C][1]	Selling Groups and Distribution Agreements.....	39-173
[C][2]	Broker-Dealer Representations and Disclosures Related to the Retail Order Period.....	39-174
[D]	Restrictions on Underwriters Voting Consents to Amend Documents	39-176
§ 39:5.2	Rule G-12, Clearing Agency Settlement	39-177
[A]	Two-Day (T+2) Settlement Cycle	39-182
[B]	Close-Out Procedures	39-183
§ 39:5.3	Rule G-13, Price Quotations.....	39-184
§ 39:5.4	Rule G-14, Transaction Reporting: Price Transparency	39-189
§ 39:5.5	Rule G-15, Customer Confirmations	39-193
[A]	Minimum Denominations	39-196
[B]	Forwarding Official Communications	39-197
§ 39:5.6	Rule G-34, CUSIP Numbers and New Issue and Market Information Requirements	39-198
[A]	Time of Formal Award and Time of First Execution.....	39-200
[B]	Timing for CUSIPs	39-201
[C]	Deadlines for NIIDS Information.....	39-203
[D]	Application for Depository Eligibility	39-204
§ 39:5.7	Municipal Fund Securities and Uniform Practice Rules.....	39-204
§ 39:6	MSRB Fair Practice Rules	39-206
§ 39:6.1	Rule G-17, Fair Dealing.....	39-206
[A]	Analytics of Rule G-17	39-207
[B]	Time-of-Trade Disclosure.....	39-209
[B][1]	History of MSRB Rule G-17 Interpretive Guidance	39-209
[B][2]	The MSRB's Rule G-17 Rationalization Project.....	39-212
[B][3]	Rule G-47 on Time-of-Trade Disclosure Obligations	39-213
[C]	Time-of-Trade Disclosure Obligations to Other Broker-Dealers or Institutional Investors; Sophisticated Municipal Market Professionals....	39-214

Table of Contents

[C][1]	Inter-Dealer Trades	39-214
[C][2]	Background on Time-of-Trade Disclosure Obligations to Institutional Investors.....	39-215
[C][3]	MSRB Rule D-15 and Rule G-48 on SMMPs	39-217
[D]	Electronic Brokerage Systems.....	39-218
[E]	Underwriter Rule G-17 Obligations to Issuers...	39-219
[E][1]	Disclosure of the Underwriter’s Role	39-221
[E][2]	Disclosures Related to the Underwriter’s Compensation	39-222
[E][3]	Representations to Issuers, Disclosure and Closing Documents	39-223
[E][4]	Disclosures Related to the Transaction and Conflicts of Interest.....	39-224
[E][5]	Retail Order Periods.....	39-225
§ 39:6.2	Best Execution	39-226
[A]	Thin Markets; Procedures.....	39-229
[B]	Broker’s Brokers.....	39-230
[C]	Policies and Procedures.....	39-230
[D]	Documentation.....	39-231
§ 39:6.3	Rule G-19; Suitability	39-233
§ 39:6.4	Rule G-23; Activities of Broker-Dealers Acting As Financial Advisors	39-236
§ 39:6.5	Rule G-30; Fair Pricing.....	39-239
[A]	Fair Pricing in Principal and Agency Transactions.....	39-240
[B]	General Principles.....	39-240
[C]	Transaction Chains and Thin Markets.....	39-241
§ 39:6.6	Rule G-32, New Issue Disclosure of Underwriting Arrangements	39-243
[A]	Disclosure of Underwriter Compensation	39-243
[B]	Securities Not Reoffered.....	39-245
§ 39:6.7	Municipal Fund Securities and Fair Practice Rules.....	39-247
§ 39:7	MSRB Rule G-32, Document Dissemination Rules	39-250
§ 39:8	Supervision Rules.....	39-250
§ 39:8.1	Defining a Supervisor	39-253
§ 39:8.2	The Requisites of Supervision.....	39-255
§ 39:8.3	Rule G-27, Policies and Procedures	39-257
§ 39:8.4	Rule G-27, Review of Written and Electronic Correspondence.....	39-259
§ 39:9	MSRB Market Integrity Rules.....	39-260
§ 39:9.1	Political Contributions.....	39-260
§ 39:9.2	<i>Quid Pro Quo</i> Corruption.....	39-261

§ 39:9.3	The Two-Year Ban	39-265
[A]	The Ban Resulting from a Contribution by a Municipal Advisor Third-Party Solicitor	39-268
[B]	Cross-Bans	39-270
[C]	Excluded Contributions; Two-Year Look-back	39-272
§ 39:9.4	Prohibition on Soliciting and Coordinating Contributions.....	39-274
§ 39:9.5	Prohibition on Circumvention of Rule G-37	39-275
§ 39:9.6	Required Disclosure to MSRB.....	39-275
§ 39:9.7	Constitutional Issues	39-276
[A]	Are Rules of the MSRB Subject to Constitutional Limitations?.....	39-276
[B]	The <i>Blount</i> First Amendment Decision	39-277
§ 39:9.8	Rule G-20, Gifts and Gratuities	39-281
§ 39:9.9	Rule G-38, Consultants	39-282
§ 39:9.10	Municipal Fund Securities and Market Integrity Rules	39-284
§ 39:10	Conflicts of Interest.....	39-287
§ 39:10.1	Chinese Wall Procedures.....	39-288
[A]	Firm Policies and Procedures	39-288
[B]	Crossing the Wall.....	39-291
[C]	The Sales and Trading Side As a Reservoir of Knowledge for the Advisory Side.....	39-292
§ 39:10.2	Official Statement Disclosure of Conflicts	39-294
[A]	WorldCom Inc. Securities Litigation and SEC Enforcement Actions.....	39-294
[B]	Limitations on MSRB Authority.....	39-297
§ 39:10.3	Research Analysts and Conflicts.....	39-299
[A]	Characteristics of Municipal Securities Research.....	39-299
[B]	The Global Research Analyst Settlement and New Firewalls.....	39-301
[C]	The Sarbanes-Oxley Act: NYSE and NASD Rules on Research Analyst Conflicts.....	39-305
[D]	SEC Regulation AC.....	39-307
[E]	TBMA Guiding Principles	39-309

Chapter 40 Municipal Advisor Regulation

Robert A. Fippinger

§ 40:1	Dodd-Frank Act Jurisdiction over Municipal Advisors	40-4
§ 40:1.1	Regulatory Framework	40-4
[A]	SEC and MSRB Rulemaking Authority.....	40-8
[B]	Application of the Tower Amendment to Municipal Advisors	40-11

Table of Contents

§ 40:1.2	The Importance of the Term “Advice”; the Advice Standard	40-11
[A]	The General-Information Exclusion	40-13
[B]	The Tension Between Giving Particularized Information and Avoiding a Recommendation Under the General-Information Exclusion	40-15
[B][1]	Disclaimers	40-16
[B][2]	Effect of Overall Course of Conduct	40-17
[C]	Business Promotional Materials Provided by Potential Underwriters	40-18
[C][1]	Disclaimers in the Context of Potential Underwriter Promotional Material	40-20
[C][2]	Effect of Overall Course of Conduct in the Context of Potential Underwriter Promotional Materials	40-21
§ 40:1.3	Municipal Advisory Activity	40-22
§ 40:2	Key Definitions and SEC Interpretive Guidance	40-22
§ 40:2.1	Municipal Entity and Obligated Person	40-22
§ 40:2.2	Treatment of Officials, Board Members, and Employees of a Municipal Entity or Obligated Person As Possible Municipal Advisors	40-26
§ 40:2.3	Issuance of Municipal Securities	40-27
§ 40:2.4	Municipal Financial Products	40-28
[A]	Municipal Derivatives	40-29
[B]	Guaranteed Investment Contracts	40-31
[C]	Investment Strategies	40-32
§ 40:2.5	Solicitation of a Municipal Entity or Obligated Person	40-34
§ 40:3	The Underwriter Exclusion	40-35
§ 40:3.1	Broker-Dealer Activities Within or Not Within the Underwriter Exclusion	40-36
§ 40:3.2	The Relationship of the Underwriter Exclusion to MSRB Rule G-17 and MSRB Rule G-23	40-39
§ 40:3.3	Persons Engaged in Activities Similar to the Underwriting of Municipal Securities	40-44
[A]	Placement Agents	40-44
[B]	Dealers or Agents in Tender Offers or Exchange Transactions	40-44
[C]	Remarketing Agents	40-45
[D]	Commercial Paper Dealers	40-46
[E]	Brokerage Services	40-47
§ 40:3.4	Time and Method of the Engagement of an Underwriter	40-48

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

§ 40:3.5	Post-Issuance Advice.....	40-50
[A]	Official Statement Corrections	40-50
[B]	Continuing Disclosure Filings	40-51
[C]	Due Diligence on Rule 15c2-12 Compliance.....	40-52
§ 40:4	The Registered Investment Adviser Exclusion	40-53
§ 40:5	The Registered Commodity Trading Advisor Exclusion; Exemption for Swap Dealers	40-56
§ 40:6	The Exclusion for an Attorney Providing Legal Advice	40-58
§ 40:6.1	General Information	40-58
§ 40:6.2	The Type of Advice	40-59
§ 40:6.3	The Recipient of the Advice.....	40-59
§ 40:7	The Exclusion for an Engineer Providing Engineering Advice	40-60
§ 40:8	The Exemptions	40-61
§ 40:8.1	Accountants	40-61
§ 40:8.2	Banks	40-62
§ 40:8.3	Responses to Requests for Proposals or Qualifications.....	40-64
§ 40:8.4	Participation by an Independent Registered Municipal Advisor	40-65
§ 40:9	Registration of Municipal Advisors.....	40-67
§ 40:9.1	Registration with the SEC	40-67
[A]	Form MA	40-67
[B]	Form MA-I.....	40-69
§ 40:9.2	Registration with MSRB	40-70
[A]	Form A-12	40-70
[B]	Fees	40-70
§ 40:10	Professional Qualifications	40-71
§ 40:10.1	Municipal Advisor Representative Examination.....	40-71
§ 40:10.2	Municipal Advisor Principal Examination	40-71
§ 40:10.3	Municipal Advisor Continuing Education Requirements	40-72
§ 40:11	Rule G-44: Municipal Advisor Supervisory and Compliance Obligations	40-73
§ 40:11.1	Purpose of In-House Supervisors and Compliance Personnel	40-73
§ 40:11.2	Supervisory System and Procedures.....	40-74
§ 40:11.3	Compliance Processes and Chief Compliance Officer	40-76
§ 40:12	The Fiduciary Duty of Municipal Advisors to Their Municipal Entity Clients	40-79
§ 40:12.1	The Dodd-Frank Act Standard.....	40-79

Table of Contents

§ 40:12.2 Reconciling the Interests of Municipal Entities
and the Interests of Investors 40-81

§ 40:12.3 The Dodd-Frank Act Delegation of
Authority to the MSRB..... 40-82

§ 40:13 The Fair Dealing Obligation of Municipal Advisors 40-83

§ 40:13.1 MSRB Rule G-17 40-83

§ 40:13.2 First Southwest Cease-and-Desist Order 40-83

§ 40:14 Rule G-42: Core Standards of Conduct for
Nonsolicitor Municipal Advisors 40-84

§ 40:14.1 General Standards of Conduct..... 40-85

[A] Duty of Care..... 40-86

[B] Duty of Loyalty Owed a Municipal Entity..... 40-87

§ 40:14.2 Disclosures at Commencement of
Municipal Advisory Activity 40-89

[A] Inadvertent Advice 40-91

[B] Consequences of Rendering Inadvertent Advice 40-92

§ 40:14.3 Documentation of Municipal Advisory
Relationship 40-93

§ 40:14.4 Recommendations 40-94

§ 40:14.5 Specific Prohibitions 40-97

§ 40:14.6 Ban on Principal Transactions 40-98

§ 40:14.7 The Fixed-Income Transaction Exception to
the Ban on Principal Transactions 40-100

§ 40:15 Rule G-20: Gifts, Gratuities, and Expenses of
Issuance 40-102

§ 40:15.1 General Limitation 40-103

§ 40:15.2 Exclusions from the \$100 Limit 40-104

§ 40:15.3 Prohibition on Use of Offering Proceeds..... 40-105

§ 40:16 Rule G-37: Political Contributions 40-106

§ 40:16.1 The Two-Year Ban 40-107

[A] Municipal Advisors Excluding Third-Party
Solicitors 40-107

[B] Municipal Advisor Third-Party Solicitors 40-109

[C] The Effect on Regulated Entity Clients of a
Municipal Advisor Third-Party Solicitor
Two-Year Ban 40-110

[D] Cross-Bans for Dealer–Municipal Advisors 40-110

§ 40:16.2 Prohibition on Soliciting and Coordinating
Contributions..... 40-111

§ 40:17 Municipal Advisors Subject to Registration
As Broker-Dealers; Placement Agent Activity..... 40-112

Appendix 40A Section 15B of the 1934 Act Marked to
Show Dodd-Frank Act Amendments App. 40A-1

Appendix 40B Municipal Advisor Registration/SEC
 Final Rules..... App. 40B-1

Appendix 40C SEC Glossary of Terms in Municipal
 Advisor Adopting ReleaseApp. 40C-1

Chapter 40A Pay-to-Play Rules

Ki P. Hong & Patricia M. Zweibel

§ 40A:1 What Are Pay-to-Play Rules?.....40A-3

§ 40A:2 Basic Features of Pay-to-Play Laws.....40A-4

§ 40A:3 Municipal Securities and the MSRB40A-6

§ 40A:4 MSRB Rule G-3740A-7

 § 40A:4.1 Restrictions and Reporting Requirements
 Under Rule G-3740A-7

§ 40A:5 Terms Defined Under the Rule40A-8

 § 40A:5.1 Which Government Officials Are Covered
 Under This Rule?40A-8

 § 40A:5.2 What Does “Municipal Securities Business”
 Mean?40A-9

 § 40A:5.3 What Is a “Contribution”?40A-10

 § 40A:5.4 What Is an “MFP”?40A-10

 [A] Newly Hired or Qualified MFPs:
 Retroactivity of MFP Status40A-11

 [B] Former MFPs: Retention of MFP Status40A-12

§ 40A:6 Treatment of MFP Contributions40A-13

 § 40A:6.1 Contribution Checks from Joint Bank
 Account40A-13

 § 40A:6.2 Volunteer Work.....40A-13

 § 40A:6.3 Contributions to National, State, or
 Local Political Parties.....40A-13

 § 40A:6.4 Attendance at Fundraisers40A-15

§ 40A:7 Exemption from the Ban.....40A-15

 § 40A:7.1 Automatic Exemption.....40A-15

 § 40A:7.2 Discretionary Exemption.....40A-15

§ 40A:8 Reporting Requirements.....40A-16

 § 40A:8.1 Who Is Required to Report?40A-16

 § 40A:8.2 When Are the Reports Due?.....40A-17

 § 40A:8.3 What Must Be Reported?.....40A-17

 [A] Reporting of Contributions.....40A-17

 [B] Reporting of Municipal Securities Business.....40A-17

§ 40A:9 MSRB Rule G-3840A-18

 § 40A:9.1 Communications with Issuers That
 Are Not Solicitations.....40A-18

Table of Contents

[A]	Incidental Communications with Issuer	40A-18
[B]	Limited Promotional Communications	40A-19
[C]	Post-Selection Communications	40A-19
[D]	Communications Incidental to Providing Recognized Professional Services	40A-20
[E]	Communications with Private Obligor in a Conduit Issuance.....	40A-20
§ 40A:10	MSRB Rule G-20	40A-20
§ 40A:10.1	Exemptions from MSRB Rule G-20	40A-20
§ 40A:11	Enforcement of MSRB Rules G-37, G-38, and G-20.....	40A-21
§ 40A:12	Recent Changes to MSRB Rule G-37.....	40A-21
§ 40A:12.1	Contributions to Bond Ballot Campaign Committees	40A-21
§ 40A:12.2	Affiliated Bank PACs	40A-23
§ 40A:13	SEC Pay-to-Play Rule Applicable to Investment Advisers.....	40A-25
§ 40A:13.1	Who Is Covered?	40A-25
§ 40A:13.2	What Is a “Covered Associate”?	40A-26
§ 40A:13.3	What Is the Extent of the Ban?	40A-26
§ 40A:13.4	Who Are Covered Officials?	40A-27
§ 40A:13.5	What Are Covered Investment Pools?	40A-27
§ 40A:13.6	Ban on Indirect Contributions	40A-28
§ 40A:13.7	Record-Keeping Requirement.....	40A-29
§ 40A:13.8	Exemptions.....	40A-29
§ 40A:13.9	Placement Agent Ban	40A-30
§ 40A:13.10	Effective Dates	40A-31
§ 40A:14	CFTC Pay-to-Play Rule for Swaps	40A-32
§ 40A:14.1	What Type of Business Is Covered?.....	40A-33
§ 40A:14.2	Prohibition on Political Contributions	40A-33
§ 40A:14.3	Definitions and Additional Provisions	40A-33
§ 40A:14.4	Exemptions.....	40A-35
§ 40A:14.5	Indirect Violations	40A-36
§ 40A:15	SEC Rule for Swaps.....	40A-36
§ 40A:15.1	What Type of Business Is Covered?.....	40A-36
§ 40A:15.2	Prohibitions on Political Contributions.....	40A-36
§ 40A:15.3	Definitions and Additional Provisions	40A-37
§ 40A:15.4	Exemptions.....	40A-38
§ 40A:15.5	Additional Prohibitions Under the Rule.....	40A-38
§ 40A:15.6	Indirect Violations	40A-39
§ 40A:16	Amendments to MSRB Rule G-37.....	40A-39
§ 40A:16.1	Municipal Advisors.....	40A-40
[A]	What Type of Business Is Covered?	40A-40
[B]	Prohibitions on Political Activity.....	40A-40

[B][1]	Ban on Making Political Contributions.....	40A-40
[B][2]	Ban on Soliciting/Coordinating Political Contributions	40A-40
[C]	Definitions	40A-41
[D]	Look-Back for New MAPs.....	40A-43
[E]	Exemptions	40A-43
[E][1]	De Minimis Contribution	40A-43
[E][2]	Automatic Exemption.....	40A-44
[E][3]	Discretionary Exemption	40A-44
[F]	Indirect Violations	40A-44
§ 40A:16.2	Broker-Dealers Engaging in Municipal Securities Business (Municipal Bond Underwriting)	40A-44
§ 40A:16.3	Required Disclosure to MSRB	40A-45
§ 40A:16.4	Record-Keeping Requirement.....	40A-46
§ 40A:17	Draft FINRA Pay-to-Play Rule	40A-46
§ 40A:17.1	Changes from the 2014 Proposed Rules.....	40A-48
§ 40A:17.2	What Type of Business Is Covered?.....	40A-49
§ 40A:17.3	Prohibitions on Making Political Contributions	40A-50
[A]	Ban on Making Political Contributions.....	40A-50
[A][1]	Covered Officials	40A-50
[A][2]	Covered Associates	40A-50
[A][3]	Look-Back for New Covered Associates.....	40A-51
[A][4]	Exemptions.....	40A-51
[B]	Ban on Soliciting Political Contributions	40A-52
[C]	Indirect Violations	40A-52
§ 40A:17.4	Record-Keeping Requirements	40A-52

PART XIII: Retirement Marketplace

Chapter 41 Reserved

Chapter 42 Summary

**New Developments Regarding Chapter 42,
ERISA Compliance Issues for
Broker-Dealers**Ch. 42 Summary-1

Chapter 42 ERISA Compliance Issues for Broker-Dealers

W. Mark Smith & Carol T. McClarnon

§ 42:1	Introduction.....	42-4
§ 42:2	ERISA Regulatory Structure.....	42-5
§ 42:2.1	Scope of ERISA	42-5

Table of Contents

§ 42:2.2	General Fiduciary Standards	42-7
[A]	Definition of a “Fiduciary”	42-8
[B]	Investment Advice Fiduciaries	42-9
§ 42:2.3	Prohibited Transaction Rules	42-17
§ 42:2.4	Acting As Broker	42-22
[A]	Fiduciary Status	42-22
[B]	Party in Interest Status	42-23
§ 42:3	ERISA Objectives of Retaining an Investment Professional	42-23
§ 42:3.1	Satisfying the Plan Fiduciary’s Own Duty	42-23
§ 42:3.2	Delegating Investment Accountability to an Investment Manager	42-24
§ 42:3.3	Obtaining Broad Section 406(a) Relief for Investment Transactions	42-25
§ 42:3.4	Obtaining Relief for Default Investments	42-26
§ 42:3.5	Obtaining Relief for Investment Advice Programs	42-26
§ 42:4	Acting As an Investment Fiduciary	42-26
§ 42:4.1	Fiduciary Accountability	42-26
§ 42:4.2	Necessary Services Exemption	42-28
[A]	Application to Broker-Dealers	42-29
[B]	Flat Fee Arrangements	42-31
[C]	Payment by Plans of Performance-Based Compensation	42-31
[D]	New Conditions for Brokers and Certain Other Service Providers	42-33
§ 42:4.3	Exclusive Benefit Rule	42-35
§ 42:4.4	Prudence Rule	42-36
§ 42:4.5	Diversification	42-37
§ 42:4.6	Compliance with Plan Documents	42-37
§ 42:4.7	Trust Requirement	42-37
§ 42:4.8	Indicia of Ownership	42-38
§ 42:4.9	Bonding	42-39
§ 42:4.10	Reporting and Participant Disclosure	42-39
§ 42:4.11	Disqualification for Criminal Convictions	42-40
§ 42:4.12	Best Execution	42-40
§ 42:4.13	Fee Sharing and Indirect Compensation	42-41
§ 42:5	Trading and Execution	42-49
§ 42:5.1	Transactions in Which a Broker-Dealer Acts As Broker (Agency Transactions)	42-50
[A]	Plans with Respect to Which a Broker-Dealer Is a Fiduciary	42-50
[B]	Plans with Respect to Which a Broker-Dealer Is Not a Fiduciary But Is a Party in Interest	42-55

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

§ 42:5.2	Principal Transactions Between a Plan and a Broker-Dealer Acting As a Dealer	42-56
[A]	Plans with Respect to Which a Broker-Dealer Is a Fiduciary	42-56
[B]	Plans with Respect to Which a Broker-Dealer Is Not a Fiduciary But Is a Party in Interest.....	42-57
[C]	Special Exemption for Principal Transactions Involving American Eagle Gold and Silver Bullion Coins.....	42-57
§ 42:5.3	Purchase of Securities from a Broker-Dealer As Underwriter or from an Underwriting Syndicate of Which a Broker-Dealer Is a Member.....	42-59
[A]	Plans with Respect to Which a Broker-Dealer Is a Fiduciary	42-59
[A][1]	Situation 1: Broker-Dealer or Other Plan Fiduciary Is Syndicate Manager	42-59
[A][2]	Situation 2: Plan Fiduciary Is Not Syndicate Manager; Plan Purchases from Syndicate Member Other Than the Fiduciary	42-60
[B]	Plans with Respect to Which a Broker-Dealer Is Not a Fiduciary But Is a Party in Interest.....	42-61
§ 42:5.4	Acting As Market-Maker	42-61
[A]	Plans with Respect to Which a Broker-Dealer Is a Fiduciary	42-61
[B]	Plans with Respect to Which a Broker-Dealer Is Not a Fiduciary But Is a Party in Interest.....	42-63
§ 42:5.5	Margin Loans and Other Extensions of Credit by Broker-Dealers.....	42-63
[A]	Plans with Respect to Which a Broker-Dealer Is a Fiduciary	42-63
[B]	Plans with Respect to Which a Broker-Dealer Is Not a Fiduciary But Is a Party in Interest.....	42-64
§ 42:5.6	Lending of Securities by a Plan to a Broker-Dealer	42-64
[A]	Borrower Is a U.S. Broker-Dealer or U.S. Bank.....	42-65
[B]	Borrower Is a Foreign Broker-Dealer or Foreign Bank.....	42-69
[C]	Compensation of the Lending Fiduciary.....	42-70
§ 42:5.7	Purchase of Mutual Fund Shares From or Through a Broker-Dealer That Is a Principal Underwriter of the Mutual Fund; Plans with Respect to Which the Broker-Dealer Is a Non-Discretionary Fiduciary or Party in Interest	42-71

Table of Contents

§ 42:5.8	Investment in Shares of a Registered Open-End Mutual Fund for Which a Broker-Dealer Is an Investment Adviser	42-73
§ 42:5.9	Alternative Relief for Sales and Loans Where Broker Is Not a Fiduciary.....	42-74
§ 42:5.10	Alternative Execution Systems.....	42-75
§ 42:5.11	Block Trades.....	42-75
§ 42:5.12	Cross-Trades.....	42-76
§ 42:5.13	Foreign Exchange Transactions	42-77
§ 42:5.14	Trade Processing Errors.....	42-78
§ 42:6	Relationship Brokerage Arrangements	42-79
§ 42:7	Plans Maintained for a Broker-Dealer's Own Employees	42-80
§ 42:7.1	An Employer's Status with Respect to Its Own Plans	42-80
§ 42:7.2	Provision of Services to Its Plans Assuming It Is a Fiduciary.....	42-81
[A]	Investment Advisory Services	42-81
[A][1]	Generally	42-81
[A][2]	Specific Exemption for Mutual Fund for Which a Broker-Dealer Is the Investment Adviser	42-81
[A][2][a]	Open-End Funds	42-81
[A][2][b]	Closed-End Funds	42-82
[B]	Broker-Dealer Services	42-82
[B][1]	Broker (Agency) Services	42-82
[B][2]	Dealer (Principal) Services	42-82
[C]	Underwriting Services.....	42-83
[C][1]	In General.....	42-83
[C][2]	Mutual Funds	42-83
§ 42:8	Other Transactions	42-83
§ 42:8.1	Affiliated Brokerage.....	42-84
§ 42:8.2	Affiliated Investment Options	42-84
§ 42:8.3	Automatic Rollovers.....	42-85
§ 42:8.4	Bank Products and Services	42-85
§ 42:8.5	Blackout Periods and Mapping	42-87
§ 42:8.6	Co-Investing	42-87
§ 42:8.7	Cross-Collateralization Agreements.....	42-88
§ 42:8.8	Customer Notes of Employer	42-89
§ 42:8.9	Default Investment Options	42-89
§ 42:8.10	Economically Targeted Investments.....	42-93
§ 42:8.11	Gifts and Entertainment Provided to Plan Fiduciaries.....	42-93
§ 42:8.12	Inadvertent Securities Purchase or Sale with Party in Interest	42-95

§ 42:8.13	Insurance and Annuity Products	42-95
§ 42:8.14	Interest-Free Loans.....	42-97
§ 42:8.15	IPOs.....	42-97
§ 42:8.16	Mortgage Pool Investment Trusts and Other Asset-Backed Securities	42-97
§ 42:8.17	Mutual Funds	42-98
§ 42:8.18	Participant Investment Advice.....	42-99
§ 42:8.19	Proxy Voting.....	42-103
§ 42:8.20	Short-Term Investments	42-105
§ 42:8.21	Soft Dollars and Directed Brokerage.....	42-105
§ 42:8.22	Wrap Fee Programs	42-106

Chapter 42A ERISA Compliance: Practical Considerations & Best Practices for Broker-Dealers

Jason C. Roberts

§ 42A:1	Introduction	42A-2
§ 42A:2	Rules Impacting Retirement Plan Services.....	42A-2
§ 42A:2.1	Plan-Level Disclosures Under 408(b)(2)—Final Rule.....	42A-2
§ 42A:2.2	Plan-Level Disclosures Under 408(b)(2)—2014 Proposed Rule	42A-5
§ 42A:2.3	Participant-Level Disclosures Under ERISA 404(a)—Final Rule.....	42A-7
§ 42A:2.4	Co-Fiduciary Liability.....	42A-8
§ 42A:3	Fiduciary Status	42A-9
§ 42A:3.1	Investment Advice.....	42A-10
§ 42A:3.2	Investment Education.....	42A-10
§ 42A:3.3	Prohibited Transactions and IRA Rollovers	42A-11
§ 42A:3.4	DOL Definition of the Term “Fiduciary”; Conflict of Interest Rule—Retirement Investment Advice	42A-13
§ 42A:3.5	Impact of DOL Conflict of Interest Rule on IRA Rollovers	42A-17
§ 42A:3.6	Activities Not Considered Investment Advice Under DOL Conflict of Interest Rule	42A-18
§ 42A:3.7	Grandfathering and Pre-Existing Transactions Under DOL Conflict of Interest Rule	42A-21
§ 42A:4	ERISA Enforcement and Litigation	42A-24
§ 42A:5	Action Items	42A-25
§ 42A:6	Conclusion.....	42A-30

Table of Contents

Appendix 42A-A Disclosure Flow Chart App. 42A-A-1
Appendix 42A-B Cross-Selling Risk Grid App. 42A-B-1

PART XIV: Broker-Dealer Cross-Border Activities

**Chapter 42B Offering Cross-Border Advisory and
Broker-Dealer Services to Non-U.S. Clients**

Christopher D. Christian

§ 42B:1 Introduction 42B-3
§ 42B:2 Key Considerations for Advisers Dealing with
Non-U.S. Clients 42B-3
 § 42B:2.1 Scope of the Investment Advisers Act 42B-3
 § 42B:2.2 Statutory Reach to Non-U.S. Clients 42B-5
 [A] Overview 42B-5
 [B] Regulation of Registered Non-U.S. Advisers 42B-5
 [C] Regulation of Registered U.S. Advisers 42B-6
 § 42B:2.3 General Client Relations and Anti-Fraud
 Considerations 42B-7
 [A] Overview 42B-7
 [B] Direct Advisory Services 42B-7
 [C] Considerations for Pooled Vehicles 42B-8
 § 42B:2.4 Fiduciary Duty Owed to All Clients 42B-9
 § 42B:2.5 Disclosure Obligations 42B-10
 § 42B:2.6 Brochure Rule 42B-11
 [A] Overview 42B-11
 [B] Form ADV Filing Requirements 42B-12
 [C] Annual Delivery Requirements 42B-13
 § 42B:2.7 Fees 42B-13
 § 42B:2.8 Cash Solicitation Rule 42B-14
 § 42B:2.9 Advertising 42B-15
 § 42B:2.10 Suitability 42B-17
 § 42B:2.11 Custody 42B-17
 [A] Overview 42B-17
 [B] Definition of Custody 42B-18
 [C] Attribution to Adviser of Custody of
 a Related Person 42B-19
 [D] Implications for Having Custody 42B-20
 [E] Special Provision for Pooled Investment
 Vehicles 42B-20
 [F] Operationally Independent Advisers 42B-21
 § 42B:2.12 Books and Records 42B-21
 § 42B:2.13 Wrap Fee Programs 42B-22

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

§ 42B:2.14	Use of Adviser Performance Record.....	42B-23
§ 42B:2.15	Contract Issues.....	42B-23
§ 42B:3	Key Considerations for U.S. Broker-Dealers Dealing with Non-U.S. Clients.....	42B-24
§ 42B:3.1	Scope of the Exchange Act Registration Provisions	42B-24
[A]	Overview.....	42B-24
[B]	Application to U.S. Entities Selling to Non-U.S. Clients	42B-25
[C]	Wholesaling Non-U.S. Funds to U.S. Intermediaries with NRA Clients from within the United States	42B-26
[D]	Application to Foreign Intermediaries	42B-26
§ 42B:3.2	Application of FINRA Licensing Provisions	42B-27
§ 42B:3.3	Applicability of FINRA Communication Rules to Sales of Non-U.S. Funds	42B-29
§ 42B:3.4	Applicability of Securities Act to the Sale of Securities to Non-U.S. Persons.....	42B-30
[A]	Overview.....	42B-30
[B]	Scope of Regulation S	42B-31
[B][1]	“Offshore Transactions”	42B-33
[B][2]	“Directed Selling Efforts”	42B-34
[C]	Regulation S Compliance Considerations	42B-35
§ 42B:3.5	Application of the Investment Company Act	42B-36
§ 42B:3.6	Compliance with Local Law	42B-37
§ 42B:3.7	Other Material Considerations.....	42B-37
[A]	Anti-Fraud Provisions	42B-38
[B]	Duty of Fair Dealing.....	42B-38
[C]	Suitability Requirements	42B-38
[D]	Anti-Money Laundering Considerations	42B-39
[E]	Data Protection/Regulation S-P	42B-39
§ 42B:4	Navigating Global Regulatory Requirements	42B-39
§ 42B:4.1	Non-U.S. Considerations in Offering Advisory Services.....	42B-40
[A]	Overview.....	42B-40
[B]	Licensing Considerations.....	42B-41
[B][1]	Managed Accounts	42B-41
[B][2]	Commingled Funds	42B-42
[C]	Marketing Considerations	42B-42
[D]	Client Servicing Considerations	42B-44
[E]	Other Considerations	42B-44
§ 42B:4.2	Non-U.S. Considerations in Offering Broker-Dealer Services to Non-U.S. Persons	42B-45

Table of Contents

[A]	Brokerage Services.....	42B-45
[B]	Offering Shares of Pooled Products.....	42B-46
§ 42B:5	Other Material Considerations	42B-47
§ 42B:5.1	Know-Your-Customer Obligations	42B-47
[A]	Application of U.S. Bank Secrecy Laws	42B-47
[B]	Application of Foreign Law.....	42B-48
§ 42B:5.2	Shareholder Reporting Obligations	42B-49
[A]	U.S. Reporting Obligations.....	42B-49
[A][1]	Sections 13(d) and 13(g) of the Exchange Act	42B-49
[A][2]	Section 13(f) of the Exchange Act.....	42B-50
[A][3]	Section 13(h) of the Exchange Act.....	42B-51
[A][4]	Section 16 of the Exchange Act.....	42B-51
§ 42B:5.3	Anti-Bribery Legislation.....	42B-52
[A]	The Foreign Corrupt Practices Act	42B-52
[B]	UK Bribery Act of 2010	42B-54
§ 42B:5.4	Use of Affiliates	42B-55
[A]	Taxation Considerations.....	42B-56
[B]	Non-U.S. Regulatory Considerations.....	42B-56
§ 42B:6	Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act (FATCA).....	42B-58

Chapter 42C Broker-Dealer Regulation in the United Kingdom: An Overview

Dr. Andrew J.H. Henderson

§ 42C:1	Introduction	42C-3
§ 42C:1.1	European Dimension.....	42C-4
§ 42C:1.2	Financial Services and Markets Act and Other UK Laws.....	42C-6
§ 42C:1.3	Measures Made by Regulators, Exchanges and Clearing Houses, and Industry Bodies	42C-7
§ 42C:2	UK Regulators: Prudential Regulation Authority and Financial Conduct Authority.....	42C-8
§ 42C:2.1	Financial Conduct Authority: Establishment, Objectives and Powers	42C-9
§ 42C:2.2	FCA Handbook.....	42C-10
§ 42C:3	General Prohibition and the Requirement to Be Authorized.....	42C-11
§ 42C:3.1	Authorization and Exemption	42C-11
§ 42C:3.2	Consequences of Breaching the General Prohibition.....	42C-12
§ 42C:3.3	Determining Whether Activities Breach the General Prohibition.....	42C-13
§ 42C:4	Regulated Activities and Specified Investments	42C-14

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

§ 42C:4.1	European Directives and the RAO.....	42C-14
§ 42C:4.2	Regulated Activities and Exclusions	42C-15
[A]	Dealing in Investments As Principal.....	42C-16
[B]	Dealing in Investments As Agent.....	42C-17
[C]	Arranging Deals in Investments.....	42C-18
[D]	Managing Investments	42C-19
[E]	Safeguarding and Administering Investments	42C-19
[F]	Advising on Investments	42C-20
[G]	Agreeing to Carry On Activities	42C-20
§ 42C:4.3	General Exemptions	42C-20
[A]	Activities Carried On in the Course of a Profession or Non-Investment Business.....	42C-20
[B]	Groups and Joint Enterprises	42C-20
[C]	Activities Carried On in Connection with the Sale of a Body Corporate	42C-21
[D]	Overseas Person Exemption.....	42C-22
§ 42C:4.4	Specified Investments	42C-22
§ 42C:5	Financial Promotion and Marketing.....	42C-24
§ 42C:6	Authorization Process	42C-25
§ 42C:7	Threshold Conditions for Authorization	42C-26
§ 42C:8	Approved Persons and Controlled Functions	42C-29
§ 42C:8.1	Fitness and Properness	42C-29
[A]	Honesty, Integrity, and Reputation.....	42C-30
[B]	Competence and Capability	42C-30
[C]	Financial Soundness	42C-30
§ 42C:8.2	Key Categories of Controlled Functions	42C-31
[A]	Significant Influence Functions	42C-31
§ 42C:8.3	Senior Management Responsibility: the New Regime	42C-32
§ 42C:9	Appointed Representatives and Tied Agents.....	42C-33
§ 42C:10	Providing Cross-Border Services and Branch Arrangements in Other EEA States.....	42C-35
§ 42C:11	Principles for Business As the Primary Source of a Regulated Firm’s Obligations	42C-37
§ 42C:12	Senior Management Arrangements, Systems, and Controls	42C-39
§ 42C:13	Financial Resources and Prudential Obligations	42C-42
[A]	Firms Outside the Scope of MiFID	42C-43
[B]	Exempt CAD Firms	42C-44
[C]	BIPRU Firms	42C-44
[D]	IFPRU Firms.....	42C-46
§ 42C:14	Market Conduct Obligations	42C-51
§ 42C:14.1	Market Abuse	42C-51
[A]	The Current Regime.....	42C-51
[B]	Future Developments	42C-54

Table of Contents

§ 42C:14.2	Insider Dealing	42C-55
§ 42C:14.3	Misleading Statements and Practices	42C-56
§ 42C:14.4	Transparency Obligations	42C-56
§ 42C:14.5	Short Selling Restrictions and Disclosure Requirements.....	42C-57
§ 42C:14.6	Reporting, Clearing and Risk Mitigation Requirements for Derivatives	42C-58
§ 42C:15	Conduct of Business and Other Obligations to Clients	42C-59
§ 42C:15.1	General Conduct of Business Obligations	42C-59
§ 42C:15.2	Conflicts of Interest.....	42C-60
§ 42C:15.3	Treating Customers Fairly	42C-61
§ 42C:15.4	Categorizing Clients	42C-62
[A]	Retail Clients	42C-62
[B]	Professional Clients	42C-62
[C]	Eligible Counterparties	42C-63
§ 42C:15.5	Communicating with Clients.....	42C-64
§ 42C:15.6	Client Agreements, Appropriateness, and Suitability	42C-66
§ 42C:15.7	Dealing and Managing	42C-68
[A]	Best Execution	42C-68
[B]	Other Requirements on Dealing and Managing.....	42C-68
§ 42C:15.8	Investment Research	42C-69
§ 42C:15.9	Reporting to the Client.....	42C-70
§ 42C:15.10	Protection of Client Assets and Client Money	42C-72
§ 42C:16	Reporting Obligations to the PRA and/or FCA	42C-73
§ 42C:16.1	Notifications to the PRA and/or FCA.....	42C-73
§ 42C:16.2	Transaction Reporting	42C-75

**Chapter 42D Offering Cross-Border Investment Products and
Advisory Services to Clients in Latin America**

Christopher D. Christian

§ 42D:1	Introduction	42D-2
§ 42D:2	Application of U.S. Regulation.....	42D-3
§ 42D:3	Offering Mutual Funds to Latin American Clients	42D-4
§ 42D:3.1	Tax Considerations.....	42D-4
[A]	U.S. Mutual Funds	42D-5
[B]	Foreign Mutual Funds	42D-5
§ 42D:3.2	Application of the Exchange Act	42D-6
[A]	Direct Sales.....	42D-6
[B]	Wholesaling	42D-8

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

§ 42D:3.3	Application of FINRA Licensing Provisions	42D-9
§ 42D:3.4	Applicability of FINRA Sales Literature Rules	42D-11
	[A] Institutional Sales Material	42D-11
	[B] Interpretive Guidance	42D-12
§ 42D:3.5	Application of the Securities Act	42D-13
	[A] Scope of Regulation S	42D-14
	[A][1] "Offshore Transactions"	42D-16
	[A][2] "Directed Selling Efforts"	42D-16
	[B] Regulation S Compliance Considerations	42D-18
§ 42D:3.6	Application of the Investment Company Act	42D-19
§ 42D:3.7	Compliance with Local Law	42D-20
§ 42D:3.8	Other Material Considerations	42D-20
	[A] Anti-Fraud Provisions	42D-20
	[B] Duty of Fair Dealing	42D-21
	[C] Suitability Requirements	42D-21
	[D] Anti-Money Laundering Considerations	42D-22
	[E] Data Protection/Regulation S-P	42D-22
§ 42D:4	Offering Advisory Services to Latin American Clients	42D-22
§ 42D:4.1	Application of the Investment Advisers Act	42D-22
§ 42D:4.2	Investment Advisers Act Client Relationship Rules	42D-25
	[A] General Anti-Fraud Considerations	42D-25
	[B] Fiduciary Duty Owed to All Clients	42D-26
	[C] Disclosure Obligations	42D-27
	[D] Fees	42D-29
	[E] Cash Solicitation Rule	42D-31
	[F] Advertising	42D-32
	[G] Suitability	42D-33
	[H] Wrap Fee Programs	42D-34
	[I] Contract Issues	42D-34
	[J] Know-Your-Customer Obligations	42D-34
§ 42D:5	Navigating Local Latin American Regulatory Requirements	42D-36
§ 42D:5.1	Brokerage Services	42D-36
§ 42D:5.2	Offering Advisory Services	42D-37
	[A] Licensing Considerations	42D-38
	[B] Marketing Considerations	42D-39
	[C] Client Servicing Considerations	42D-40
	[D] Other Considerations	42D-41
§ 42D:5.3	Offering Pooled Products Directly	42D-42

Table of Contents

§ 42D:6 Foreign Corrupt Practices Act 42D-42
§ 42D:7 Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act (FATCA)..... 42D-44

**Chapter 42E Canada: Securities Regulatory Requirements
Applicable to Non-Resident Broker-Dealers,
Investment Advisers, and Investment Fund
Managers**

Michael C. Nicholas & Sean D. Sadler

§ 42E:1 Purpose 42E-3
§ 42E:2 The Canadian Securities Regulatory Framework 42E-3
 § 42E:2.1 Jurisdictional Scope and Authority 42E-3
 § 42E:2.2 Investment Industry Regulatory
 Organization of Canada 42E-5
 § 42E:2.3 Mutual Fund Dealers Association of Canada ... 42E-7
§ 42E:3 Trading in Securities by Non-Resident
 Broker-Dealers 42E-7
 § 42E:3.1 Exempt Market Dealer Registration 42E-8
 § 42E:3.2 Investment Dealer Registration 42E-9
 § 42E:3.3 Restricted Dealer Registration 42E-10
 § 42E:3.4 International Dealer Exemption 42E-11
 § 42E:3.5 Registered Dealer Exemption 42E-13
 § 42E:3.6 Specified Debt Exemption 42E-13
§ 42E:4 Advising in Securities by Non-Resident
 Investment Advisers 42E-15
 § 42E:4.1 Portfolio Manager Registration 42E-16
 § 42E:4.2 Restricted Adviser Registration 42E-17
 § 42E:4.3 Sub-Adviser Exemption 42E-17
 § 42E:4.4 International Adviser Exemption 42E-18
§ 42E:5 Acting As an Investment Fund Manager 42E-19
 § 42E:5.1 A Bifurcated Regulatory Framework 42E-19
 [A] MI 32-102—The Instrument Jurisdictions 42E-20
 [B] MP 31-202—The Policy Jurisdictions 42E-23
 § 42E:5.2 Unregistered Investment Fund Manager
 Annual Fee—Ontario Only 42E-23
 § 42E:5.3 Registration As an Investment Fund
 Manager 42E-24
§ 42E:6 Registration Requirements Applicable to
 Offshore Private Equity Fund Offerings into
 Canada 42E-25
§ 42E:7 Annual Registration Exemption Filing
 Requirements 42E-26
 § 42E:7.1 Annual Notice of Continued Reliance 42E-26
 § 42E:7.2 Ontario Annual Capital Markets
 Participation Fee 42E-27

§ 42E:8	Prospectus Requirements	42E-27
§ 42E:8.1	Accredited Investor Exemption.....	42E-28
§ 42E:8.2	Minimum Investment Exemption.....	42E-28
§ 42E:8.3	Offering Memorandum Requirement	42E-28
§ 42E:8.4	Exempt Trade Reporting and Filing Fee Requirements.....	42E-29
§ 42E:9	Limited Partnership Securities Offerings.....	42E-29
§ 42E:9.1	Other Canadian Jurisdictions	42E-30
§ 42E:10	Terrorist Financing Reporting Obligations	42E-30
Appendix 42E	Canada: Securities Regulatory Requirements Applicable to Non-Resident Broker-Dealers, Investment Advisers, and Investment Fund Managers—SUMMARY.....	App. 42E-1
Appendix 42E-A	Persons or Companies Considered to Be Accredited Investors	App. 42E-A-1
Appendix 42E-B	General Requirements for All Applicants for Registration	App. 42E-B-1
Appendix 42E-C	Requirements for Registration As an Exempt Market Dealer	App. 42E-C-1
Appendix 42E-D	Requirements for Registration As an Investment Dealer and Membership in IIROC.....	App. 42E-D-1
Appendix 42E-E	NI-31-103, Registration Requirements, Exemptions and Ongoing Obligations: Permitted Clients	App. 42E-E-1
Appendix 42E-F	Requirements for Registration As a Portfolio Manager	App. 42E-F-1
Appendix 42E-G	Requirements for Registration As an Investment Fund Manager	App. 42E-G-1

PART XV: Special Product Sales

Chapter 42F Structuring and Selling Structured Products

Anna T. Pinedo

§ 42F:1	Overview	42F-3
§ 42F:2	Structured Products Basics	42F-4
§ 42F:2.1	What Are Structured Products?	42F-4
§ 42F:2.2	Types of Structured Products	42F-4
§ 42F:2.3	Who Issues Structured Products?	42F-5
§ 42F:2.4	Who Buys Structured Products?	42F-8

Table of Contents

§ 42F:3	Regulatory Framework Applicable to Structured Products	42F-10
§ 42F:3.1	Offering Platforms	42F-12
§ 42F:3.2	Registered Programs	42F-13
[A]	Disclosures for Registered Offerings of Structured Products	42F-13
[B]	Free-Writing Prospectuses	42F-14
§ 42F:3.3	Continuous Issuance Programs	42F-14
[A]	Types of MTN Programs	42F-15
[B]	Disclosure Documents for MTN Programs	42F-16
[B][1]	Offering Memorandum	42F-16
[C]	Ancillary Agreements	42F-17
[C][1]	Distribution Agreement or Program Agreement	42F-18
[C][2]	Additional Ancillary Agreements	42F-19
§ 42F:4	Securities Liability at the Time of Sale	42F-19
§ 42F:5	Considerations in Connection with Section 3(a)(2) Programs	42F-20
§ 42F:5.1	What Is a Bank?	42F-21
[A]	Securities Guaranteed by a Bank	42F-21
[B]	Non-U.S. Banks	42F-21
§ 42F:5.2	Types of Securities	42F-22
§ 42F:5.3	FINRA Requirements	42F-22
§ 42F:5.4	OCC Registration	42F-23
§ 42F:5.5	FDIC Guidance	42F-23
§ 42F:5.6	Minimum Denominations and Suitability Requirements	42F-24
§ 42F:5.7	Blue Sky Laws	42F-25
§ 42F:5.8	Exchange Act Reporting	42F-25
§ 42F:5.9	Securities Liability	42F-26
§ 42F:6	Considerations in Connection with Structured Certificates of Deposit Programs	42F-26
§ 42F:6.1	Types of Instruments	42F-26
§ 42F:6.2	Registration Requirements	42F-28
[A]	Disclosure Requirements	42F-28
§ 42F:6.3	Documentation and Distribution	42F-29
§ 42F:6.4	Blue Sky Laws	42F-30
§ 42F:7	Disclosure Issues Affecting All Structured Products	42F-30
§ 42F:7.1	Type of Product	42F-31
§ 42F:7.2	Product Names	42F-32
§ 42F:7.3	Risk Disclosures	42F-32
[A]	Credit Risk	42F-32
[B]	Secondary Market	42F-33
[C]	Tax Characteristics	42F-33

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

[D]	Conflicts of Interest.....	42F-33
[E]	Pay-Out Structure.....	42F-34
[F]	Reference Assets	42F-34
§ 42F:7.4	Fees.....	42F-36
§ 42F:7.5	SEC Sweep Letter	42F-36
§ 42F:8	Distribution of Structured Products.....	42F-38
§ 42F:9	Broker-Dealer Standard of Care	42F-41
§ 42F:10	Developments Relating to the Sales and Marketing of Structured Products	42F-42
§ 42F:10.1	Notices to Members and FINRA Alerts.....	42F-42
[A]	New Products	42F-43
[B]	Structured Products	42F-44
[C]	Leveraged and Inverse Exchange-Traded Funds	42F-44
[D]	Principal-Protected Notes	42F-45
[E]	Reverse Convertible Securities.....	42F-45
[F]	Commodity Futures-Linked Securities	42F-46
[G]	Complex Products	42F-48
[H]	Exchange-Traded Notes.....	42F-49
§ 42F:11	FINRA Enforcement Actions	42F-49
§ 42F:11.1	H&R Block.....	42F-50
§ 42F:11.2	Ferris, Baker Watts LLC.....	42F-50
§ 42F:11.3	Santander Securities	42F-51
§ 42F:11.4	UBS Financial Services.....	42F-51
§ 42F:11.5	Wells Fargo	42F-53
§ 42F:11.6	RBC Capital Markets	42F-54
§ 42F:12	OCIE Sweep	42F-54
§ 42F:13	Litigation and Other Enforcement Actions.....	42F-56
§ 42F:13.1	Snowball Action	42F-57
§ 42F:13.2	Massachusetts Attorney General Action	42F-57
§ 42F:13.3	<i>In re</i> Lehman Brothers and Principal Protection	42F-57
§ 42F:13.4	<i>In re</i> TVIX Securities Litigation	42F-58
§ 42F:13.5	SEC Settlement Involving Currency-Linked Notes	42F-59
§ 42F:14	Industry Best Practices.....	42F-60
§ 42F:14.1	Counterparty Risk Management Group.....	42F-60
§ 42F:14.2	Joint Associations Principles	42F-61
§ 42F:15	The IOSCO Toolkit	42F-61
§ 42F:16	Useful Reminders.....	42F-62
Appendix 42F-A	Requirements for Sale of Structured Products	App. 42F-A-1

Table of Contents

Chapter 42G Regulation of Mutual Fund Sales Practices

Clifford E. Kirsch

§ 42G:1	Introduction	42G-2
§ 42G:2	Broker-Dealer Suitability Obligations.....	42G-3
§ 42G:2.1	FINRA Suitability Obligations.....	42G-3
[A]	Prior to 2012	42G-3
[B]	FINRA Rule 2111	42G-4
[C]	Recommendations to Customers.....	42G-5
[D]	Components of Suitability Obligations.....	42G-6
[E]	Customer's Investment Profile.....	42G-7
[F]	Institutional Investors	42G-8
§ 42G:2.2	Know-Your-Customer Obligations	42G-9
§ 42G:2.3	Suitability Obligations Under the Federal Securities Laws	42G-10
§ 42G:2.4	Disclosure Obligations	42G-12
§ 42G:2.5	Switching Violations.....	42G-13
§ 42G:2.6	Breakpoint Violations	42G-15
[A]	Sales Just Below Breakpoints	42G-15
[B]	Delivery of the Correct Breakpoint Discount	42G-16
§ 42G:2.7	Multi-Class Mutual Funds	42G-19
§ 42G:2.8	Online Suitability Issues	42G-22
§ 42G:2.9	Bond Funds.....	42G-24
§ 42G:2.10	Inverse and Leveraged ETFs	42G-25
§ 42G:3	Cash and Non-Cash Compensation	42G-26
§ 42G:3.1	Cash Compensation.....	42G-26
[A]	FINRA Regulation of Cash Compensation.....	42G-26
[B]	SEC Regulation of Revenue Sharing	42G-28
[C]	Directed Brokerage Arrangements	42G-30
§ 42G:3.2	Non-Cash Compensation.....	42G-31
[A]	Gifts and Entertainment.....	42G-32
[B]	Training or Education Meetings	42G-33
[C]	Sales Contests.....	42G-35
§ 42G:3.3	Record-Keeping Requirements	42G-37
§ 42G:4	Bank Broker-Dealer Sales of Mutual Funds	42G-37

Chapter 42H Private Placement Sales

Ernest Edward Badway & Joshua Horn

§ 42H:1	Introduction	42H-2
§ 42H:2	Statutes and Regulations Governing Private Placement Use	42H-2
§ 42H:2.1	Investors.....	42H-3
§ 42H:2.2	Securities Act Section 4(2).....	42H-4

§ 42H:2.3	Regulation D	42H-4
§ 42H:2.4	JOBS Act.....	42H-5
[A]	No More “Private Offerings”	42H-5
[B]	No More “Bad Guys” in Private Placements	42H-8
[C]	More Shareholders Do Not Require More Work?	42H-9
[D]	A Different Kind of “Public” Company— Crowdfunding and Regulation A+	42H-9
§ 42H:2.5	Other Exchange Act Considerations.....	42H-12
§ 42H:2.6	State Law Preemption.....	42H-15
§ 42H:2.7	FINRA Considerations	42H-17
§ 42H:3	Practical Compliance Considerations	42H-17
§ 42H:3.1	Registration	42H-18
§ 42H:3.2	Finders.....	42H-18
§ 42H:3.3	Outside Business Activities	42H-21
§ 42H:3.4	Escrow Accounts.....	42H-25
§ 42H:4	Case Discussion.....	42H-26
§ 42H:5	Conclusion.....	42H-27

VOLUME 4

Table of Chapters	vii
--------------------------------	-----

PART XVI: Special Topics

Chapter 43 Arbitration of a Securities Customer Dispute Before FINRA—A Primer on the Practice

Frank J. Cuccio, David J. Butler & Logan S. Fisher

§ 43:1	Overview.....	43-2
§ 43:2	Arbitration in the Securities Industry.....	43-3
§ 43:2.1	Brief History	43-3
§ 43:2.2	Getting to Arbitration.....	43-4
§ 43:2.3	FINRA’s Role in Arbitration.....	43-6
§ 43:2.4	FINRA Dispute Resolution Online Portal.....	43-7
§ 43:3	Practice in FINRA Arbitration	43-7
§ 43:4	Commencement of the Arbitration	43-8
§ 43:4.1	Generally.....	43-8
§ 43:4.2	Venue and Hearing Location.....	43-8
§ 43:5	Pleadings in Arbitration.....	43-10
§ 43:5.1	Statement of Claim	43-10
§ 43:5.2	Answer.....	43-11

Table of Contents

§ 43:6	Arbitrator Selection Process	43-12
§ 43:6.1	Generally.....	43-12
§ 43:6.2	Arbitrators.....	43-13
§ 43:6.3	Number and Classification of Arbitrators.....	43-13
§ 43:6.4	Arbitrator Disclosure Information	43-14
§ 43:6.5	Arbitrator Ranking.....	43-15
§ 43:6.6	Short List Replacement Arbitrator Procedure	43-16
§ 43:6.7	Disqualification of Arbitrators	43-17
§ 43:7	Initial Pre-Hearing Conference	43-17
§ 43:8	Motion Practice in FINRA Arbitrations.....	43-19
§ 43:8.1	Generally.....	43-19
§ 43:8.2	Pre-Hearing Dispositive Motion Practice.....	43-20
§ 43:8.3	Eligibility for Arbitration.....	43-21
§ 43:9	Discovery Process	43-22
§ 43:9.1	Generally.....	43-22
§ 43:9.2	FINRA's Discovery Guide and Compulsory Discovery Production.....	43-22
§ 43:9.3	Supplemental Discovery	43-23
§ 43:9.4	Other Discovery Devices.....	43-24
§ 43:9.5	Discovery Motions.....	43-25
§ 43:9.6	Non-Party Issues.....	43-25
§ 43:10	Pre-Hearing Exchange.....	43-27
§ 43:11	The Hearing	43-27
§ 43:11.1	Generally.....	43-27
§ 43:11.2	Conduct of the Hearing	43-28
§ 43:12	The Award	43-30
§ 43:12.1	Generally.....	43-30
§ 43:12.2	Review of the Arbitration Award	43-31
§ 43:13	Conclusion	43-31

**Chapter 44 Capital Markets and Corporate
Finance Activities**

K. Susan Grafton

§ 44:1	Introduction.....	44-7
§ 44:2	Types of Securities Offerings.....	44-7
§ 44:3	Underwriting Terms and Arrangements	44-8
§ 44:3.1	Introduction.....	44-8
§ 44:3.2	FINRA Rule 5110 (Corporate Financing Rule).....	44-9
[A]	Overview	44-9
[B]	Determining Whether an Offering Is Subject to the Rule	44-10
[B][1]	Offerings Not Subject to Rule 5110.....	44-10
[B][1][a]	“Public Offerings”.....	44-10
[B][1][b]	“Exempt Offerings”	44-11

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

[B][2]	Offerings Not Subject to Rule 5110's Filing Requirements.....	44-12
[C]	Determining Whether Underwriting Compensation Is Fair and Reasonable.....	44-13
[C][1]	Overview.....	44-13
[C][2]	Identifying "Items of Value"	44-13
[C][2][a]	Cash and Non-Cash Items of Value.....	44-13
[C][2][b]	Items Not Deemed to Be "Items of Value"	44-15
[C][2][c]	Safe Harbors for Certain Acquisitions of Securities.....	44-15
[C][3]	Is the Compensation Unfair and Unreasonable?	44-16
[C][4]	Non-Cash Compensation.....	44-18
[C][5]	<i>Per Se</i> Unfair and Unreasonable Underwriting Compensation.....	44-18
[C][6]	Disclosure of Underwriting Compensation	44-19
[D]	Filing Requirement	44-19
[D][1]	Overview and Procedural Requirements	44-19
[D][2]	Documents That Must Be Filed with FINRA.....	44-21
[D][3]	Other Information That Must Be Provided to FINRA.....	44-21
[D][4]	FINRA Review and Comments	44-22
[D][5]	Notice Requirements	44-23
[E]	Lock-up Restriction.....	44-23
§ 44:4	FINRA Rule 5121 (Public Offerings of Securities with Conflicts of Interest).....	44-25
§ 44:4.1	Overview	44-25
§ 44:4.2	Conflicts of Interest Subject to Rule 5121	44-25
§ 44:4.3	Compliance Requirements of Rule 5121	44-27
[A]	QIU Requirement	44-27
[B]	Compliance with the Requirements of Rule 5110.....	44-28
[C]	Disclosure Requirements	44-28
[D]	Discretionary Account Requirement.....	44-28
[E]	Additional Requirements for Offerings of a Member's Own Securities.....	44-29
§ 44:4.4	Exemptions from Rule 5121	44-29
[A]	No Managing Underwriter Has a Conflict of Interest.....	44-29
[B]	Securities that Have a Bona Fide Public Market	44-30
[C]	Securities that Are Rated "Investment Grade"	44-30

Table of Contents

§ 44:5	Broker-Dealer Regulatory Requirements in Connection with Private Placements of Securities	44-30
§ 44:5.1	Overview	44-30
[A]	Introduction	44-30
[B]	Regulation D	44-31
[B][1]	Regulation D Exemptions	44-31
[B][2]	Reasonable Investigation	44-33
§ 44:5.2	FINRA Rule 5122 (Private Placements of Securities Issued by Members)	44-34
[A]	Overview	44-34
[B]	Scope of Rule 5122	44-34
[C]	Requirements of Rule 5122	44-35
[C][1]	Overview	44-35
[C][2]	Disclosure Requirement	44-35
[C][3]	Filing with FINRA	44-36
[C][4]	Use of Offering Proceeds	44-36
[D]	Exemptions	44-37
§ 44:5.3	FINRA Rule 5123 (Private Placements of Securities)	44-38
[A]	Overview	44-38
[B]	General Requirement: Notice Filing	44-39
[C]	Exempted Offerings	44-39
§ 44:6	FINRA Rule 5130 (Restrictions on the Purchase and Sale of Initial Equity Public Offerings)	44-40
§ 44:6.1	Overview	44-40
§ 44:6.2	Scope of Rule 5130	44-41
§ 44:6.3	General Prohibitions	44-41
§ 44:6.4	Restricted Persons	44-42
§ 44:6.5	Exemptions to Rule 5130	44-43
[A]	Exempt Persons and Accounts	44-43
[B]	Issuer-Directed Securities	44-44
[C]	Anti-Dilution Provision	44-46
[D]	Stand-by Purchasers	44-46
§ 44:6.6	Preconditions for Sale	44-46
§ 44:6.7	Record Retention and Notice Requirements	44-47
§ 44:7	New Issue Allocations and Distributions	44-48
§ 44:7.1	Introduction	44-48
§ 44:7.2	FINRA Rule 5131 (New Issue Allocations and Distributions)	44-49
[A]	<i>Quid Pro Quo</i> Allocations	44-49
[B]	Spinning	44-49
[B][1]	Prohibition	44-49
[B][2]	Annual Representation and Recordkeeping Requirement	44-51

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

[C]	Flipping.....	44-52
[C][1]	Prohibition.....	44-52
[C][2]	Recordkeeping Requirements.....	44-53
[D]	New Issue Pricing and Trading Practices.....	44-53
[D][1]	Report of Indications of Interest and Final Allocations.....	44-53
[D][2]	Lock-Up Agreements.....	44-53
[D][3]	Required Contractual Provision in the AAU.....	44-54
[D][4]	Market Orders.....	44-55
§ 44:8	FINRA Rule 5141 (Sale of Securities in a Fixed Price Offering).....	44-56
§ 44:8.1	Overview.....	44-56
§ 44:8.2	Prohibition.....	44-57
§ 44:8.3	Exclusions and Guidance.....	44-58
§ 44:9	FINRA Rule 5150 (Fairness Opinions).....	44-59
§ 44:9.1	Overview.....	44-59
§ 44:9.2	Disclosure Requirements of Rule 5150.....	44-60
[A]	Acting As a Financial Advisor and Contingent Compensation.....	44-60
[B]	Other Significant Payment or Compensation.....	44-61
[C]	Material Relationships.....	44-61
[D]	Independent Verification of Information.....	44-61
[E]	Use of Fairness Committee.....	44-62
[F]	Compensation to Insiders.....	44-62
§ 44:9.3	Procedures Required by Rule 5150.....	44-63
§ 44:10	FINRA Rule 5160 (Disclosure of Price and Concessions in Selling Agreements).....	44-63
§ 44:10.1	Overview.....	44-63
§ 44:10.2	Requirements.....	44-64
§ 44:11	Anti-Manipulation Regulation of Distributions of Securities.....	44-64
§ 44:11.1	Introduction to Regulation M.....	44-64
§ 44:11.2	Rule 101 (Activities by Distribution Participants and Their Affiliated Purchasers).....	44-65
[A]	General Prohibition.....	44-65
[B]	Is There a Distribution of Securities?.....	44-66
[B][1]	Magnitude of the Offering and the Presence of Special Selling Efforts and Selling Methods.....	44-67
[B][1][a]	Magnitude of the Offering.....	44-67
[B][1][b]	Presence of Special Selling Efforts and Selling Methods.....	44-68

Table of Contents

[B][2]	Offerings Subject to Rule 101	44-68
[B][2][a]	Shelf Offerings.....	44-68
[B][2][b]	“At-the-Market” Offerings	44-69
[B][2][c]	Mergers and Exchange Offers.....	44-69
[C]	Is the Person Subject to Rule 101?	44-69
[C][1]	Distribution Participant.....	44-69
[C][2]	Affiliated Purchasers	44-70
[D]	Are the Distributed Securities “Covered Securities”?	44-72
[D][1]	Subject Securities	44-72
[D][2]	Reference Securities	44-72
[D][2][a]	Derivatives	44-73
[D][2][b]	Fixed-Income Securities	44-73
[D][2][c]	Target Company Securities.....	44-74
[D][3]	Securities Excepted from Rule 101	44-74
[D][3][a]	Actively-Traded Securities.....	44-74
[D][3][b]	Investment Grade Non-Convertible and Asset-Backed Securities	44-75
[D][3][c]	Exempted Securities	44-76
[D][3][d]	Face-Amount Certificate or Securities Issued by an Open-End Management Investment Company or Unit Investment Trust	44-76
[E]	Are the Activities Prohibited by Rule 101?	44-76
[E][1]	General Prohibition	44-76
[E][2]	Excepted Activities.....	44-77
[E][2][a]	Research Complying with Securities Act Rule 138 or 139	44-77
[E][2][b]	Transactions Complying with Rule 103 or Rule 104 of Regulation M.....	44-77
[E][2][c]	Odd-Lot Transactions.....	44-77
[E][2][d]	Exercises of Securities	44-78
[E][2][e]	Unsolicited Transactions.....	44-79
[E][2][f]	Basket Transactions.....	44-79
[E][2][g]	<i>De Minimis</i> Transactions	44-79
[E][2][h]	Transactions in Connection with a Distribution	44-80
[E][2][i]	Offers to Sell or the Solicitation of Offers to Buy.....	44-80
[E][2][j]	Transactions in Rule 144A Securities	44-81
[E][3]	Restricted Periods.....	44-81
[E][3][a]	Securities with an ADTV Value of \$100,000 or More of an Issuer Whose Common Equity Securities Have a Public Float Value of \$25 Million or More.....	44-82
[E][3][b]	Distributions of All Other Securities	44-82

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

[E][3][c]	Mergers, Acquisitions, and Exchange Offers	44-82
[E][3][d]	Initial Public Offerings	44-83
[E][4]	Completion of Participation in a Distribution	44-84
[F]	FINRA Rule 5190 (Notification Requirements for Offering Participants).....	44-85
[F][1]	Overview	44-85
[F][2]	Notice of Distributions Subject to a Restricted Period Under Regulation M	44-85
[F][3]	Actively-Traded Securities	44-86
[G]	Exemptions	44-87
§ 44:11.3	Rule 103 (Passive Market Making Activities)	44-87
[A]	Overview	44-87
[B]	Conditions of Rule 103.....	44-88
[B][1]	Price Restriction.....	44-88
[B][2]	Purchasing Capacity Limitation	44-89
[B][3]	Limitation on Displayed Size	44-89
[C]	Interaction of Rule 103 and Nasdaq's Market Maker Requirements.....	44-90
[D]	Pending Rulemaking	44-91
§ 44:11.4	Rule 104 (Stabilization and Other Syndicate Activities)	44-91
[A]	Overview	44-91
[B]	Stabilizing Levels	44-93
[B][1]	Overview	44-93
[B][2]	Stabilizing When the Principal Market Is Open	44-94
[B][3]	Stabilizing When the Principal Market Is Closed	44-94
[B][4]	Initiating Stabilizing Immediately Before the Opening of Quotations	44-94
[B][5]	Adjustment to Stabilizing Bids	44-95
[B][5][a]	Maximum Stabilizing Caps.....	44-95
[B][5][b]	Events Affecting a Security's Price	44-96
[C]	Cross-Border Transactions	44-96
[D]	Excepted Securities.....	44-97
[D][1]	No Exception for Actively-Traded Securities	44-97
[D][2]	Exempted Securities.....	44-97
[D][3]	Rule 144A and Regulation S Offerings	44-97
[E]	Penalty Bids and Syndicate Covering Transactions.....	44-97

Table of Contents

	[F] Disclosure, Notification, and Recordkeeping Requirements	44-98
	[F][1] Books and Records Requirements	44-99
§ 44:11.5	Rule 105 (Short Sales in Connection with a Public Offering)	44-99
	[A] Overview	44-99
	[B] Best Efforts Offerings	44-100
	[C] Excepted Activity	44-100
	[C][1] Bona Fide Purchases	44-100
	[C][2] Separate Accounts	44-101
	[C][3] Investment Companies	44-103
§ 44:11.6	Proposed Rule 106 of Regulation M	44-103
§ 44:12	Contingent and Best Efforts Offerings	44-104
§ 44:12.1	Introduction	44-104
§ 44:12.2	Rule 10b-9 (Prohibited Representations in Connection with Certain Offerings)	44-105
	[A] Overview	44-105
	[B] General Requirements of Rule 10b-9	44-105
	[C] Sales Must Be Bona Fide	44-106
	[D] Insiders' Purchases	44-107
	[E] "Market Out" Clauses and Other Conditions Precedent in Firm Commitment Underwritings	44-108
	[F] Modifications to the Terms of an Ongoing Offering	44-108
§ 44:12.3	Rule 15c2-4 (Transmission or Maintenance of Payments Received in Connection with Underwritings)	44-109
	[A] Overview	44-109
	[B] General Requirements	44-109
	[C] "Promptly" Transmitted	44-110
	[D] Eligible Bank Accounts	44-111
	[E] Sweep Accounts	44-111
	[F] Breaking Escrow	44-112
§ 44:13	Rule 10b-18 (Issuer Repurchases)	44-112
§ 44:13.1	Introduction	44-112
§ 44:13.2	Scope of the Rule 10b-18 Safe Harbor	44-113
	[A] Overview	44-113
	[B] Availability of the Safe Harbor to Certain Securities and Transactions	44-114
§ 44:13.3	The Four Conditions of the Safe Harbor	44-115
	[A] Overview	44-115
	[B] Manner of Purchase Condition	44-116
	[C] Timing Condition	44-117
	[D] Price Condition	44-118

[E]	Volume Condition	44-119
[F]	Rule 10b-18 Purchases After a Market-Wide Trading Suspension.....	44-120
§ 44:13.4	Repurchases Effected Outside the United States	44-121
§ 44:13.5	Riskless Principal Transactions.....	44-121
§ 44:13.6	Disclosure	44-122

Chapter 45 Margin and Extensions of Credit: An Overview

Elliott R. Curzon

§ 45:1	Introduction.....	45-1
§ 45:2	Overview of Exchange Act Regulation of Credit.....	45-2
§ 45:2.1	Regulations T and U	45-3
§ 45:2.2	Section 11(d) of the Exchange Act	45-4
[A]	Application to the Purchase of Mutual Funds	45-4
§ 45:2.3	Exchange Act Disclosure Rules	45-4
§ 45:3	Operational Issues	45-4
§ 45:3.1	Net Capital/Customer Protection	45-4
§ 45:3.2	Cash Accounts.....	45-5
§ 45:3.3	Margin Accounts.....	45-6
§ 45:3.4	Nonpurpose or Good Faith Credit Account.....	45-6
§ 45:4	SRO Rules.....	45-7
§ 45:5	Specific Maintenance Margin Requirements for Certain Securities and Positions.....	45-8
§ 45:5.1	Margin Treatment of Multiple Positions	45-8
§ 45:5.2	Shelf-Registered, Control and Restricted Securities.....	45-9
§ 45:5.3	Other Provisions	45-9

**Chapter 46 U.S. Securities Activities of Foreign
Broker-Dealers**

Jack P. Drogin

§ 46:1	Overview of Securities Activities of Foreign Broker-Dealers	46-2
§ 46:1.1	General	46-2
§ 46:1.2	SEC's Extra-Territorial Approach to Broker-Dealer Registration Enforcement.....	46-6
§ 46:2	Early Treatment of Foreign Broker-Dealers.....	46-8
§ 46:3	Proposed Rule 15a-6	46-11
§ 46:4	Rule 15a-6 As Adopted	46-13
§ 46:4.1	Unsolicited Trades: Paragraph (a)(1)	46-14
[A]	Solicitation Generally	46-14
[B]	Solicitation Through Use of the Internet	46-15

Table of Contents

§ 46:4.2	Research: Paragraph (a)(2)	46-17
[A]	Providing Research to Major U.S. Institutional Investors	46-17
[B]	Application of Regulation AC to Foreign Broker-Dealers.....	46-19
§ 46:4.3	Direct Contacts and “Chaperones:” Paragraph (a)(3)	46-24
§ 46:4.4	Transactions Involving Registered Broker-Dealers and Certain Others: Paragraph (a)(4)	46-28
§ 46:5	Subsequent No-Action Letters and SEC Staff FAQs.....	46-29
§ 46:5.1	Seven Firms Letter	46-29
§ 46:5.2	Nine Firms Letter	46-30
§ 46:5.3	Other Letters.....	46-32
§ 46:5.4	Canadian Snow-Bird Exemption.....	46-33
§ 46:5.5	SEC Staff FAQs.....	46-34
§ 46:6	Proposed Amendments to Rule 15a-6	46-36
§ 46:6.1	Extension of Rule 15a-6 to Qualified Investors.....	46-36
§ 46:6.2	Unsolicited Transactions	46-37
§ 46:6.3	Provision of Research Reports.....	46-37
§ 46:6.4	Solicited Trades.....	46-37
[A]	Proposed Exemption (A)(1)	46-38
[B]	Proposed Exemption (A)(2)	46-39
§ 46:6.5	Sales Activities Under Exemptions (A)(1) and (A)(2)	46-40
§ 46:6.6	Establishment of Qualification Standards.....	46-40
§ 46:6.7	Counterparties and Specific Customers.....	46-41
§ 46:6.8	Foreign Options Exchanges.....	46-42

Chapter 47 The Volcker Rule

Jerome J. Roche & Matthew G. Bisanz

§ 47:1	Introduction.....	47-2
§ 47:1.1	Regulatory FAQs	47-5
§ 47:1.2	Potential Developments	47-5
§ 47:2	Entities Subject to the Volcker Rule.....	47-6
§ 47:3	Proprietary Trading Prohibition	47-7
§ 47:3.1	Proprietary Trading Defined.....	47-7
§ 47:3.2	Trading Account.....	47-7
§ 47:3.3	Financial Instruments.....	47-8
§ 47:3.4	Excluded Trading Activities.....	47-9

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

[A]	Repurchase and Securities Lending Transactions.....	47-9
[B]	Liquidity Management.....	47-9
[C]	Clearing Organization Transactions	47-10
[D]	Excluded Clearing Activities	47-10
[E]	Trading in Satisfaction of Delivery Obligations.....	47-11
[F]	Trading As Agent, Broker, or Custodian	47-11
[G]	Trading on Behalf of Employee Benefit Plans	47-11
[H]	Debt Collection Activities.....	47-11
§ 47:4	Permitted Trading Activities	47-11
§ 47:4.1	Underwriting.....	47-12
§ 47:4.2	Market Making	47-13
§ 47:4.3	Risk-Mitigating Hedging Activities	47-14
§ 47:4.4	Trading Outside the United States	47-16
§ 47:4.5	Government Securities	47-17
§ 47:4.6	Trading on Behalf of Customers	47-18
§ 47:4.7	Trading by Regulated Insurance Companies	47-19
§ 47:4.8	Limitations on Permitted Trading Activities.....	47-19
§ 47:5	Prohibitions on Certain Covered Fund Activities.....	47-19
§ 47:5.1	Covered Funds	47-19
§ 47:5.2	Ownership Interests.....	47-20
§ 47:5.3	Sponsor	47-21
§ 47:5.4	Entities Excluded from the Definition of a Covered Fund.....	47-22
§ 47:6	Permitted Covered Fund Activities	47-23
§ 47:6.1	Asset Management	47-23
§ 47:6.2	Covered Fund Activities Conducted Solely Outside the United States.....	47-24
§ 47:6.3	Limitations on Permitted Covered Fund Activities.....	47-26
§ 47:7	Covered Transactions with Covered Funds	47-26
§ 47:8	Monitoring Compliance	47-27
§ 47:8.1	Banking Entities with No Covered Activities	47-27
§ 47:8.2	Banking Entities with Limited Covered Activities	47-27
§ 47:8.3	Minimum Compliance Requirements for Banking Entities Engaged in Covered Activities	47-27
§ 47:8.4	Additional Compliance Requirements for Significant Trading Entities.....	47-28

Table of Contents

Chapter 48 Broker-Dealer Use of Social Media and Related Regulations

Lawrence P. Stadulis, Peter M. Hong & Shanna B. Bayer

§ 48:1	Introduction.....	48-2
§ 48:2	What Is Social Media?	48-2
§ 48:2.1	Types of Content.....	48-3
§ 48:2.2	Examples.....	48-3
§ 48:2.3	Uses	48-4
[A]	Public.....	48-4
[B]	Internal.....	48-5
[C]	Personal	48-5
[D]	Institutional.....	48-5
[E]	Existing Customers.....	48-6
§ 48:3	Regulatory Landscape	48-6
§ 48:3.1	FINRA.....	48-7
[A]	Guidance.....	48-7
[A][1]	Communications with the Public.....	48-7
[A][1][a]	Overview	48-7
[A][1][b]	Types of Communications	48-7
[A][1][b][i]	Retail Communications.....	48-7
[A][1][b][ii]	Interactive vs. Static Content	48-8
[A][1][b][iii]	Third-Party Content	48-9
[A][1][b][iv]	Correspondence	48-10
[A][1][b][v]	Institutional Communications	48-11
[A][1][b][vi]	Public Appearances	48-12
[A][2]	Interactive Content Subject to Supervision	48-12
[A][3]	Suitability	48-13
[A][4]	Recordkeeping.....	48-14
[B]	Targeted Examination Letter.....	48-14
[C]	Enforcement.....	48-15
§ 48:3.2	SEC	48-15
[A]	Interactive Content Guidance.....	48-16
[B]	Investment Advisers	48-16
[C]	Enforcement.....	48-17
§ 48:4	Conclusion	48-18

Chapter 49 Investment Banking Compliance

Robert Evans III, Russell D. Sacks & Richard B. Alsop

§ 49:1	Information	49-5
§ 49:1.1	Insider Trading.....	49-5
[A]	Generally	49-5
[B]	Legal Framework.....	49-6

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

	[B][1]	Securities Exchange Act § 10(b).....	49-6
	[B][2]	Insider Trading and Securities Fraud Enforcement Act.....	49-7
§ 49:1.2		Information Barriers	49-9
	[A]	Generally	49-9
	[B]	Effective Information Barriers: Minimum Elements	49-9
	[B][1]	Written Policies and Procedures.....	49-10
	[B][2]	Wall-Crossing Procedures	49-10
	[B][3]	Restricted List and Watch List	49-10
	[B][4]	Surveillance of Trading Activity.....	49-11
	[B][5]	Physical and Electronic Separation.....	49-11
	[B][6]	Training and Education Programs	49-12
	[B][7]	Employee Attestation.....	49-12
§ 49:1.3		Sales Practices; Testing-the-Waters and Gun Jumping.....	49-12
§ 49:1.4		2012 OCIE Report on the Use of Material Non-Public Information by Broker-Dealers	49-13
	[A]	Sources of MNPI.....	49-13
	[B]	Control Structure.....	49-14
	[B][1]	Issues Identified.....	49-14
	[B][2]	Control Room.....	49-14
	[B][3]	“Above the Wall” Designations	49-14
	[B][4]	Materiality Determinations	49-15
	[B][5]	Oversight of Non-Transactional Sources of MNPI.....	49-15
	[B][6]	Compliance with Oral Confidentiality Agreements.....	49-15
	[B][7]	Personal Trading Problems	49-15
	[C]	Access Controls	49-15
	[C][1]	Limiting Authorized Access	49-15
	[C][2]	Preventing Unauthorized Access	49-16
	[C][3]	Other Control Issues	49-16
	[C][4]	Surveillance.....	49-16
	[D]	Controls Perceived to Be Effective.....	49-16
	[D][1]	Control Room Monitoring.....	49-16
	[D][2]	Information Barriers	49-16
	[D][3]	Surveillance.....	49-17
	[E]	Conclusion.....	49-17
§ 49:1.5		Selective Disclosure by Issuers: Regulation FD	49-17
§ 49:1.6		Practical Issues in Managing Confidential Information.....	49-18
	[A]	Expert Networks	49-18
	[B]	Hedge Fund Interaction—Market Sounding	49-19

Table of Contents

[C]	Hedge Fund Access to Corporate Executives	49-19
[D]	Use of Confidentiality Agreements.....	49-21
§ 49:1.7	Personal Trading Procedures	49-22
§ 49:2	Conflicts and Related Disclosures	49-23
§ 49:2.1	Dealing with M&A Transaction Conflicts	49-23
[A]	Generally	49-23
[A][1]	Conflict Identification	49-23
[A][2]	Engagement Letters.....	49-24
[A][3]	Disclosure and Consent	49-24
[A][4]	Co-Advisors and Co-Financers	49-24
[A][5]	Standards for Frequent Areas of Conflict.....	49-24
[B]	Stapled Financing.....	49-24
[C]	Delaware Chancery Court Cases	49-24
[D]	Conclusion.....	49-25
§ 49:2.2	Fairness Opinions	49-26
§ 49:2.3	FINRA Guidelines on Conflicts in Product Development and Distribution.....	49-27
[A]	Enterprise-Level Frameworks to Identify and Manage Conflicts of Interest	49-27
[B]	Conflicts of Interest in the Manufacture and Distribution of New Financial Products	49-28
[C]	Compensation of Associated Persons	49-28
[D]	Conclusion.....	49-28
§ 49:3	Offering Issues	49-28
§ 49:3.1	Rule 506(c).....	49-28
§ 49:3.2	Rule 506(d).....	49-29
§ 49:3.3	Regulation M	49-30
§ 49:3.4	Section 10b-5 Due Diligence Defense	49-32
[A]	Background	49-32
[B]	When a “Reasonable Investigation” Is Required.....	49-32
[C]	The Legal Standard for “Reasonable Investigation”.....	49-33
§ 49:4	Volcker Rule.....	49-33
§ 49:4.1	Prohibition on Proprietary Trading	49-34
§ 49:4.2	Underwriting Exemption Permitting Principal Trading.....	49-35
§ 49:4.3	Prohibition on Sponsoring and Investing in Private Funds	49-36
§ 49:4.4	Compliance.....	49-36
§ 49:5	Relationship of Investment Banking to Research	49-37
§ 49:5.1	Legal Framework.....	49-37
§ 49:5.2	FINRA Regulation of Research Reports	49-37
§ 49:5.3	Toys “R” Us Enforcement Actions Regarding Rule 2711.....	49-38

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

§ 49:5.4	Forthcoming Changes to Equity Research Rule; New Fixed-Income Research Rule.....	49-40
§ 49:5.5	Global Research Analyst Settlement.....	49-42
§ 49:5.6	Regulation AC.....	49-43
§ 49:5.7	Disclosure Requirements	49-43
§ 49:5.8	Firewalls and Chaperoning	49-45
§ 49:5.9	Joint Due Diligence	49-48
§ 49:5.10	Further Separation of Research Analysts from Banking Personnel	49-48
§ 49:5.11	Road Shows and Investor Education.....	49-49
§ 49:5.12	Restricting Research.....	49-50
§ 49:5.13	Publication of Research During Securities Offerings	49-51
§ 49:6	Compensation Structures	49-52
§ 49:6.1	FED/SEC Guidance.....	49-52
§ 49:6.2	FINRA Corporate Financing Rules	49-56
[A]	General Overview and Policy Background	49-56
[B]	Operation of the Corporate Financing Rules	49-57
[C]	Items of Value That Are Per Se Unreasonable....	49-57
[D]	Defining “Compensation”	49-58
[E]	Items of Value	49-58
[F]	Conflicts of Interest.....	49-59
[F][1]	Definition of “Affiliate”	49-60
[F][2]	Compliance in the Event of a Conflict of Interest.....	49-61
[F][3]	Filing Requirements Under Rule 5121	49-62
§ 49:7	Gifts and Entertainment.....	49-62
§ 49:7.1	Gifts Over \$100 Are Not Permitted	49-62
[A]	Scope and Exclusions of Rule 3220	49-63
[B]	Supervision and Recordkeeping	49-63
§ 49:7.2	Entertainment Must Be Reasonable and Customary	49-64
[A]	Generally	49-64
[B]	Supervision and Recordkeeping	49-65
§ 49:8	Licensing, Registration, and Exemptions from Registration.....	49-65
§ 49:8.1	U.S. Licensing: Series 7, 24, and 79	49-65
[A]	Generally	49-65
[B]	Series 7	49-66
[C]	Series 24	49-66
[D]	Series 79	49-66
§ 49:8.2	Activities of Non-U.S. Broker-Dealers	49-67
§ 49:8.3	January 2014 FINRA Letter Regarding M&A Brokers.....	49-69

Table of Contents

§ 49:9	Anti-Money Laundering (AML)	49-70
§ 49:9.1	AML Program	49-70
§ 49:9.2	OFAC Compliance.....	49-70
§ 49:9.3	KYC Compliance	49-71
§ 49:10	IPO Allocation and Client Sophistication	49-73
§ 49:10.1	IPO Allocation	49-73
[A]	Overview	49-73
[B]	FINRA Rule 5130—the “New Issue” Rule.....	49-73
[C]	Practical Compliance Steps.....	49-75
[D]	Frequency of Representation	49-75
[E]	FINRA Rule 5131(b): The Prohibition on Spinning.....	49-75
[E][1]	Generally	49-75
[E][2]	25% <i>De Minimis</i> Test for Collective Investment Accounts	49-76
[F]	2013 Amendment to Rule 5131	49-76
[F][1]	Other IPO Allocation Regulations Set Forth in Rule 5131	49-77
[F][1][a]	Quid Pro Quo Allocations.....	49-77
[F][1][b]	Policies Concerning Flipping.....	49-77
[F][1][c]	New Issue Pricing and Trading Practices	49-77
[F][1][c][i]	Reports of Indications of Interest and Final Allocations.....	49-77
[F][1][c][ii]	Restriction on Transfer of the Issuer’s Shares by Officers and Directors of the Issuer	49-78
[F][1][c][iii]	Agreement Among Underwriters.....	49-78
[F][1][c][iv]	Market Orders	49-78
§ 49:10.2	QIB Certification	49-78
[A]	Introduction.....	49-78
[B]	Qualification As a QIB	49-79
[C]	How a Broker-Dealer Qualifies As a QIB	49-79
[D]	Reasonable Belief	49-79
§ 49:10.3	FINRA Regulation of Suitability	49-80
[A]	Introduction.....	49-80
[B]	Components of Suitability Obligations.....	49-80
[B][1]	The Reasonable Basis Obligation.....	49-80
[B][2]	The Customer-Specific Obligation.....	49-80
[B][3]	Quantitative Suitability	49-80
[C]	Customers and Potential Investors.....	49-81
[D]	Institutional Suitability.....	49-81
[E]	Suitability Requirements for Institutional Accounts	49-81
[F]	Compliance with the Exception.....	49-82

BROKER-DEALER REGULATION

§ 49:11 Books and Records..... 49-82

 § 49:11.1 SEC Recordkeeping Requirements 49-82

 [A] Introduction..... 49-82

 [B] Retention of E-mail and Text Messages..... 49-83

 [C] Rule 17a-3 Recordkeeping Requirements..... 49-84

 [D] Communications with the Public..... 49-96

 § 49:11.2 Electronic Communications 49-97

 [A] Introduction..... 49-97

 [B] Key Elements of an Electronic Mail
 Compliance System 49-98

 [C] Role of Third-Party Vendors..... 49-98

 § 49:11.3 Social Networking and Social Media 49-99

 [A] Static Content Regulation..... 49-99

 [B] Interactive Content Regulation..... 49-99

 [C] Personal Devices in Business
 Communications 49-99

 [C][1] Compliance on a Personal Device 49-99

 [D] Third-Party Posts 49-100

 [D][1] Overview 49-100

 [D][2] Exceptions..... 49-100

 [D][3] Compliance Strategies 49-100

 [E] Third-Party Links..... 49-100

 [F] Data Feeds 49-100

 [G] Recordkeeping..... 49-101

 [H] Retention 49-101

 [I] Supervision 49-101

 [I][1] General Elements of Social Media
 Supervision 49-101

Table of Authorities..... T-1

Index..... I-1

Preface

The goal of this book is to present the regulatory framework applying to broker-dealers in practical and reader-friendly terms. The book follows other PLI titles that I have had the pleasure of completing: *Investment Adviser Regulation*, *Mutual Funds and Exchange Traded Funds Regulation*, *Financial Product Fundamentals*, and *Variable Annuities and Variable Life Insurance Regulation*. The feedback we have received on these books has been positive and, as a result, we have tried to stick with the same formula here.

I want to thank my wife for all of her helpful comments and suggestions on this project, especially when this book was in its formative stages. Also, I am very thankful to my Dad, who introduced me to the brokerage business years ago and who has taught me so much about the business over the years; and to my Mom, who has been so supportive of all of my efforts.

I am very grateful to the contributing authors and have learned a lot from working with them on this project.

In addition, I cannot say enough about the people at PLI. The two individuals I work most closely with—Ellen Siegel and Carol Benedicto—are a pleasure to work with. They put a real and meaningful effort in making sure that the end product is high-quality.

